

# Vauxhall Astra

Owner's Manual





---

# Contents

Introduction .....	2
In brief .....	6
Keys, doors and windows .....	20
Seats, restraints .....	37
Storage .....	59
Instruments and controls .....	98
Lighting .....	140
Climate control .....	153
Driving and operating .....	163
Vehicle care .....	225
Service and maintenance .....	285
Technical data .....	288
Customer information .....	328
Index .....	334

## Introduction

Fuel	Designation	<input type="text"/>		
Engine oil	Grade	<input type="text"/>		
	Viscosity	<input type="text"/>		
Tyre pressure	Tyre size		Front	Rear
	Summer tyres	<input type="text"/>	<input type="text"/>	<input type="text"/>
	Winter tyres	<input type="text"/>	<input type="text"/>	<input type="text"/>
Weights	Gross vehicle weight rating	<input type="text"/>		
	- Kerb weight, basic model	<input type="text"/>		
	= Loading	<input type="text"/>		



## Vehicle specific data

Please enter your vehicle's data on the previous page to keep it easily accessible. This information is available in the sections "Service and maintenance" and "Technical data" as well as on the identification plate.

## Introduction

Your vehicle is a designed combination of advanced technology, safety, environmental friendliness and economy.

This Owner's Manual provides you with all the necessary information to enable you to drive your vehicle safely and efficiently.

Make sure your passengers are aware of the possible risk of accident and injury which may result from improper use of the vehicle.

You must always comply with the specific laws and regulations of the country that you are in. These laws may differ from the information in this Owner's Manual.

When this Owner's Manual refers to a workshop visit, we recommend your Vauxhall Authorised Repairer. For gas vehicles, we recommend a Vauxhall Authorised Repairer licensed to service gas vehicles.

All Vauxhall Authorised Repairers provide first-class service at reasonable prices. Experienced mechanics trained by Vauxhall work according to specific Vauxhall instructions.

The customer literature pack should always be kept ready to hand in the vehicle.

## Using this manual

- This manual describes all options and features available for this model. **Certain descriptions, including those for display and menu functions, may not apply to your vehicle due to model variant, country specifications, special equipment or accessories.**
- The "In brief" section will give you an initial overview.

- The table of contents at the beginning of this manual and within each section shows where the information is located.
- The index will enable you to search for specific information.
- This Owner's Manual depicts left-hand drive vehicles. Operation is similar for right-hand drive vehicles.
- The Owner's Manual uses the factory engine designations. The corresponding sales designations can be found in the section "Technical data".
- Directional data, e.g. left or right, or front or back, always relate to the direction of travel.
- The vehicle display screens may not support your specific language.
- Display messages and interior labelling are written in **bold** letters.

## Danger, Warnings and Cautions

### **Danger**

Text marked **⚠ Danger** provides information on risk of fatal injury. Disregarding this information may endanger life.

### **Warning**

Text marked **⚠ Warning** provides information on risk of accident or injury. Disregarding this information may lead to injury.

### **Caution**

Text marked **Caution** provides information on possible damage to the vehicle. Disregarding this information may lead to vehicle damage.

## Symbols

Page references are indicated with ⇨.  
⇨ means "see page".

Thank you for choosing a Vauxhall.

We wish you many hours of pleasurable driving.

**Your Vauxhall Team**




## In brief

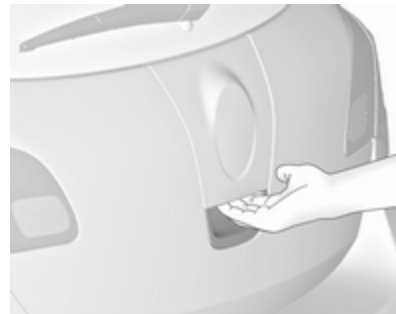
## Initial drive information

### Vehicle unlocking



Press  to unlock the doors and load compartment. Open the doors by pulling the handles.

### 5-door hatchback, Sports tourer




To open the tailgate, push the touchpad switch below the brand emblem.

### 3-door hatchback




To open the tailgate, push the brand emblem at the bottom half.

Press  on remote control to unlock and open the tailgate. The doors remain locked.

### 4-door saloon



Press  on the remote control for at least 2 seconds; the boot lid opens slightly.

Radio remote control ⇨ 21, Central locking system ⇨ 23, Load compartment ⇨ 25.

### Seat adjustment

#### Seat positioning



Pull handle, slide seat, release handle. Try to move the seat back and forth to ensure that the seat is locked in place.

Seat position ⇨ 39, Seat adjustment ⇨ 39.

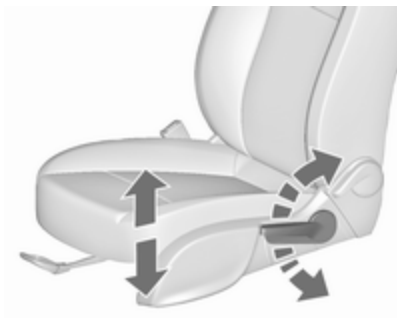
#### Danger

Do not sit nearer than 25 cm from the steering wheel, to permit safe airbag deployment.

**Seat backrests**

Pull lever, adjust inclination and release lever. Allow the seat to engage audibly.

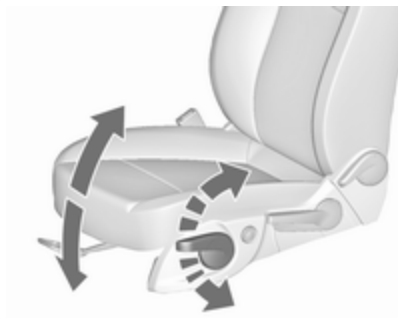
Seat position ⇨ 39, Seat adjustment ⇨ 39, Seat folding ⇨ 42.

**Seat height**

Lever pumping motion

up : seat higher  
down : seat lower

Seat position ⇨ 39, Seat adjustment ⇨ 39.

**Seat inclination**

Lever pumping motion

up : front end higher  
down : front end lower

Seat position ⇨ 39, Seat adjustment ⇨ 39.

## Power seat adjustment



Operate switch 1:

forwards/backwards : length adjustment

upwards/downwards : height adjustment

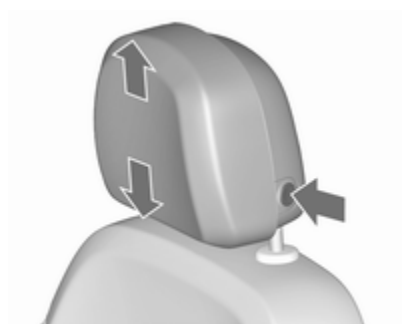
upwards/downwards at front : inclination adjustment

Operate switch 2:

forwards/backwards at the top : backrest adjustment

Power seat adjustment ⇨ 43, Seat folding ⇨ 42.

## Head restraint adjustment



Press release button, adjust height, engage.

Head restraints ⇨ 37.

## Seat belt



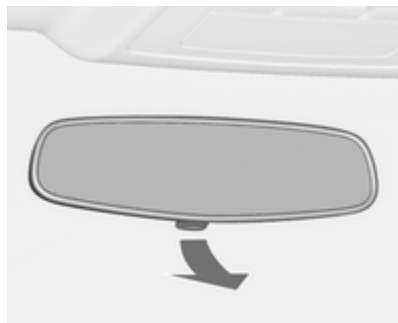
Pull out the seat belt and engage in belt buckle. The seat belt must not be twisted and must fit close against the body. The backrest must not be tilted back too far (maximum approx. 25 °).

To release belt, press red button on belt buckle.

Seat position ⇨ 39, Seat belts ⇨ 46, Airbag system ⇨ 49.

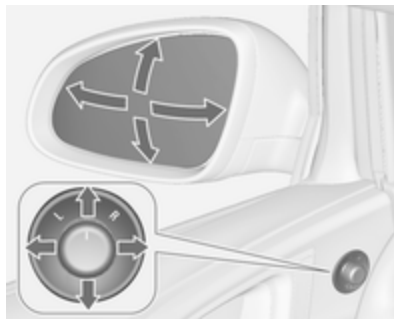
## Mirror adjustment

### Interior mirror



To reduce dazzle, adjust the lever on the underside of the mirror housing.  
Interior mirror ⇨ 31, Automatic anti-dazzle interior mirror ⇨ 32.

### Exterior mirrors



Select the relevant exterior mirror and adjust it.

Convex exterior mirrors ⇨ 30,  
Electric adjustment ⇨ 30, Folding  
exterior mirrors ⇨ 30, Heated  
exterior mirrors ⇨ 31.

## Steering wheel adjustment



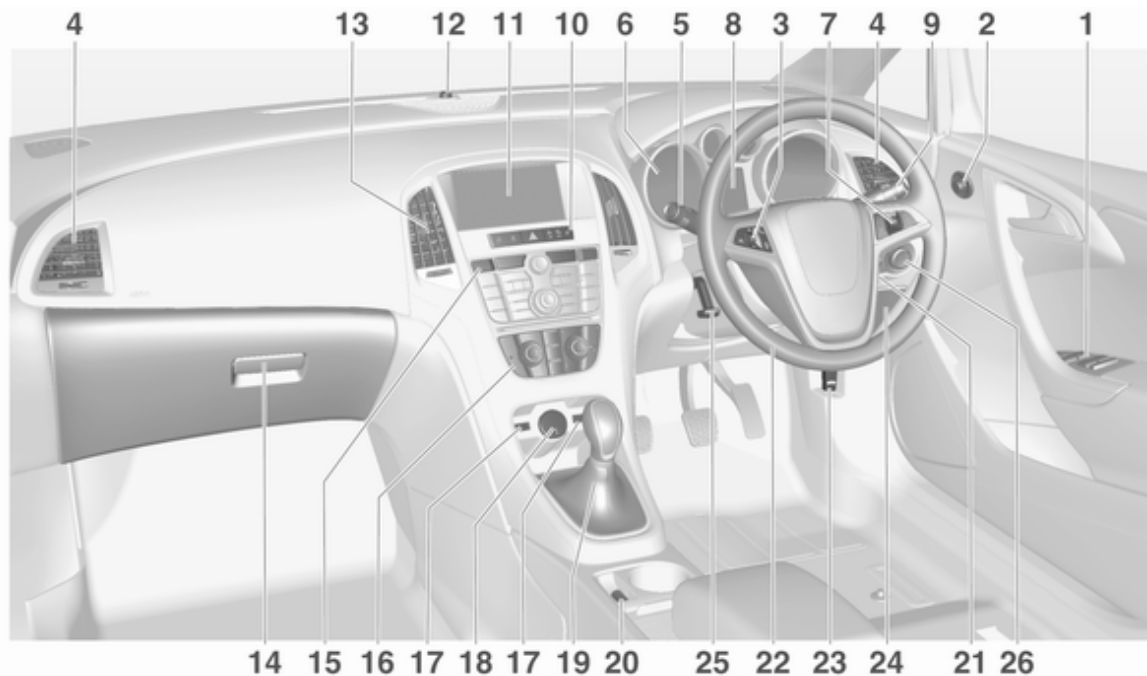
Unlock the lever, adjust the steering wheel, then engage the lever and ensure it is fully locked.

Do not adjust the steering wheel unless the vehicle is stationary and the steering wheel lock has been released.

Airbag system ⇨ 49, Ignition  
positions ⇨ 165.



## Instrument panel overview



<p><b>1</b> Power windows ..... 33</p> <p><b>2</b> Exterior mirrors ..... 30</p> <p><b>3</b> Cruise control ..... 183</p> <p>    Speed limiter ..... 185</p> <p>    Adaptive cruise control ..... 186</p> <p>    Forward collision alert ..... 193</p> <p><b>4</b> Side air vents ..... 161</p> <p><b>5</b> Windscreen wiper, windscreen washer system, headlight washer system, rear window wiper, rear window washer system ..... 100</p> <p><b>6</b> Instruments ..... 106</p> <p><b>7</b> Steering wheel controls ..... 99</p> <p><b>8</b> Driver Information Centre .... 118</p> <p><b>9</b> Turn and lane-change signals, headlight flash, low beam and high beam, high beam assist ..... 147</p> <p>    Exit lighting ..... 151</p> <p>    Parking lights ..... 148</p> <p>    Buttons for Driver Information Centre ..... 118</p>	<p><b>10</b> Sport mode ..... 180</p> <p>    Central locking system ..... 23</p> <p>    Hazard warning flashers .... 147</p> <p>    Fuel selector ..... 107</p> <p>    Control indicator for airbag deactivation ..... 112</p> <p>    Control indicator for front passenger seat belt ..... 112</p> <p>    Tour mode ..... 180</p> <p><b>11</b> Info-Display ..... 122</p> <p><b>12</b> Anti-theft alarm system status LED ..... 28</p> <p><b>13</b> Centre air vents ..... 161</p> <p><b>14</b> Glovebox ..... 59</p> <p><b>15</b> Sport mode ..... 180</p> <p>    Tour mode ..... 180</p> <p>    Traction Control system (TC) ..... 178</p> <p>    Electronic Stability Control (ESC) ..... 179</p> <p>    Parking assist systems ..... 198</p>	<p>    Lane departure warning ..... 212</p> <p>    Eco button for stop-start system ..... 166</p> <p><b>16</b> Climate control system ..... 153</p> <p><b>17</b> AUX input, USB input ..... 11</p> <p><b>18</b> Power outlet ..... 104</p> <p><b>19</b> Selector lever, manual transmission ..... 175</p> <p>    Automatic transmission ..... 171</p> <p><b>20</b> Electric parking brake ..... 176</p> <p><b>21</b> Ignition switch with steering wheel lock ..... 165</p> <p><b>22</b> Horn ..... 100</p> <p>    Driver airbag ..... 49</p> <p><b>23</b> Bonnet release lever ..... 227</p> <p><b>24</b> Storage compartment, fuse box ..... 255</p> <p><b>25</b> Steering wheel adjustment . . 99</p> <p><b>26</b> Light switch ..... 140</p> <p>    Headlight range adjustment ..... 143</p> <p>    Front fog lights ..... 148</p>
---	---	--

Rear fog light ..... 148

Instrument illumination ..... 149

## Exterior lighting



Turn light switch:

**O** : lights off


 : sidelights


 : low beam




### Automatic light control

**AUTO** : automatic light control:  
exterior lighting is switched  
on and off automatically

 : activation or deactivation of  
the automatic light control

 : sidelights

 : low beam

### Fog lights

Press light switch:

 : front fog lights

 : rear fog light

Lighting ⇨ 140.

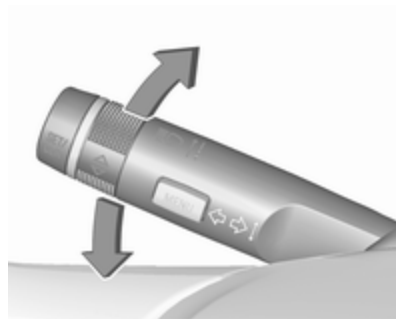
### Headlight flash, high beam and low beam



headlight flash : pull lever  
high beam : push lever  
low beam : push or pull lever

Automatic light control ⇨ 141, High beam ⇨ 142, Headlight flash ⇨ 142, Adaptive forward lighting ⇨ 144.

### Turn and lane-change signals




lever up : right turn signal  
lever down : left turn signal

Turn and lane-change signals ⇨ 147, Parking lights ⇨ 148.

### Hazard warning flashers



Operated by pressing .  
Hazard warning flashers ⇨ 147.

## Horn




Press .

## Climate control

Heated rear window, heated exterior mirrors



The heating is operated by pressing .

Heated rear window ⇨ 35.

## Demisting and defrosting the windows



Press .

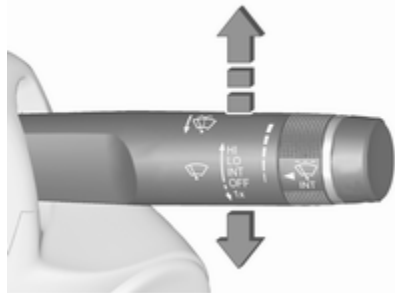
Set the temperature control to the highest level.

Heated rear window  on.

Climate control system ⇨ 153.

## Washer and wiper systems

### Windscreen wiper

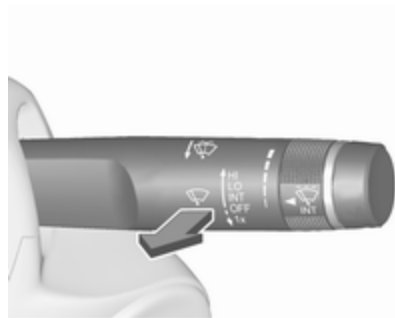


- HI** : fast
- LO** : slow
- INT** : interval wiping or automatic wiping with rain sensor
- OFF** : off

For a single wipe when the windscreen wiper is off, press the lever down to position **1x**.

Windscreen wiper ⇨ 100, Wiper blade replacement ⇨ 233.

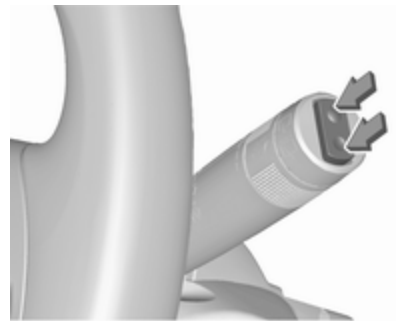
### Windscreen and headlight washer



Pull lever.

Windscreen and headlight washer system ⇨ 100, Washer fluid ⇨ 230.

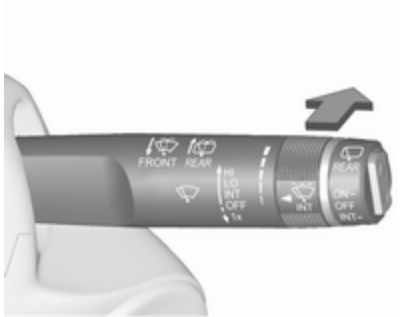
### Rear window wiper



Press the rocker switch to activate the rear window wiper:

- upper switch : continuous operation
- lower switch : intermittent operation
- middle position : off

## Rear window washer



Push lever.

Washer fluid is sprayed on the rear window and the wiper wipes a few times.

Rear window wiper/washer ⇨ 102.

## Transmission

### Manual transmission

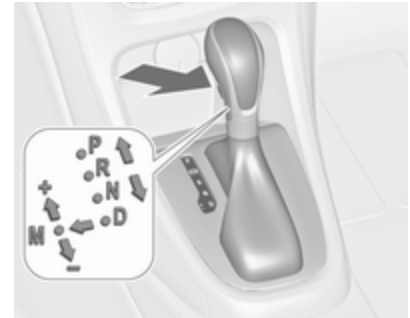


Reverse: with the vehicle stationary, depress clutch pedal, press the release button on the selector lever and engage the gear.

If the gear does not engage, set the lever to neutral, release the clutch pedal and depress again; then repeat gear selection.

Manual transmission ⇨ 175.

### Automatic transmission



**P** : park

**R** : reverse

**N** : neutral

**D** : automatic mode

**M** : manual mode: move selector lever from **D** to the left.

**+** : manual mode upshifting

**-** : manual mode downshifting

The selector lever can only be moved out of **P** when the ignition is on and the brake pedal is applied. To engage **P** or **R**, press the release button.

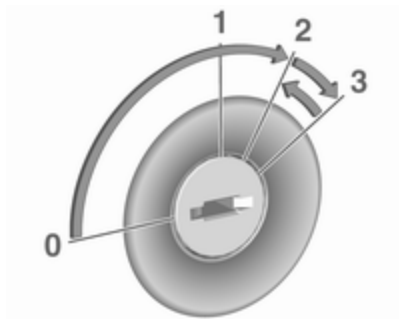
Automatic transmission ⇨ 171.


## Starting off

### Check before starting off

- Tyre pressure and condition  
↪ 261, ↪ 307.
- Engine oil level and fluid levels  
↪ 228.
- All windows, mirrors, exterior lighting and number plates are free from dirt, snow and ice and are operational.
- Proper position of mirrors, seats, and seat belts ↪ 30, ↪ 39, ↪ 47.
- Brake function at low speed, particularly if the brakes are wet.

### Starting the engine



- Turn key to position **1**.
- Move the steering wheel slightly to release the steering wheel lock.
- Operate clutch and brake.
- Automatic transmission in **P** or **N**.
- Do not operate accelerator pedal.
- Diesel engines: turn the key to position **2** for preheating and wait until control indicator  extinguishes.
- Turn key to position **3** and release.

Starting the engine ↪ 165.

### Stop-start system



If the vehicle is at a low speed or at a standstill and certain conditions are fulfilled, activate an Autostop as follows:

- Depress the clutch pedal.
- Set the lever in neutral.
- Release the clutch pedal.

An Autostop is indicated by the needle at the **AUTOSTOP** position in the tachometer.

To restart the engine, depress the clutch pedal again.

Stop-start system ↪ 166.



## Parking

### ⚠ Warning

- Do not park the vehicle on an easily ignitable surface. The high temperature of the exhaust system could ignite the surface.
- Always apply the parking brake. Activate the manual parking brake without pressing the release button. Apply as firmly as possible on a downhill slope or uphill slope. Depress foot brake at the same time to reduce operating force.  
For vehicles with electric parking brake, pull switch (P) for approx. one second.  
The electric parking brake is applied when control indicator (P) illuminates ⇨ 113.
- Switch off the engine.
- If the vehicle is on a level surface or uphill slope, engage first gear or set the selector

lever to position **P** before removing the ignition key. On an uphill slope, turn the front wheels away from the kerb.

If the vehicle is on a downhill slope, engage reverse gear or set the selector lever to position **P** before removing the ignition key. Turn the front wheels towards the kerb.

- Close the windows and the sunroof.
- Remove the ignition key. Turn the steering wheel until the steering wheel lock is felt to engage.  
For vehicles with automatic transmission, the key can only be removed when the selector lever is in position **P**.

- Lock the vehicle by pressing (L) on the radio remote control.  
Activate the anti-theft alarm system ⇨ 28.
- The engine cooling fans may run after the engine has been switched off ⇨ 227.

### Caution

After running at high engine speeds or with high engine loads, operate the engine briefly at a low load or run in neutral for approx. 30 seconds before switching off, in order to protect the turbocharger.

Keys, locks ⇨ 20, Laying the vehicle up for a long period of time ⇨ 226.

## Keys, doors and windows

<b>Keys, locks</b> .....	<b>20</b>
Keys .....	20
Car Pass .....	21
Radio remote control .....	21
Memorised settings .....	22
Central locking system .....	23
Automatic locking .....	24
Child locks .....	25
<b>Doors</b> .....	<b>25</b>
Load compartment .....	25
<b>Vehicle security</b> .....	<b>27</b>
Anti-theft locking system .....	27
Anti-theft alarm system .....	28
Immobiliser .....	29
<b>Exterior mirrors</b> .....	<b>30</b>
Convex shape .....	30
Electric adjustment .....	30
Folding mirrors .....	30
Heated mirrors .....	31
<b>Interior mirrors</b> .....	<b>31</b>
Manual anti-dazzle .....	31
Automatic anti-dazzle .....	32

<b>Windows</b> .....	<b>32</b>
Windscreen .....	32
Manual windows .....	32
Power windows .....	33
Heated rear window .....	35
Sun visors .....	35
<b>Roof</b> .....	<b>35</b>
Sunroof .....	35
Glass panel .....	36

## Keys, locks

### Keys

<b>Caution</b>
Do not attach heavy or bulky items to the ignition key.

### Replacement keys

The key number is specified in the Car Pass or on a detachable tag.

The key number must be quoted when ordering replacement keys as it is a component of the immobiliser system.

Locks ⇨ 282.

The code number of the adapter for the locking wheel nuts is specified on a card. It must be quoted when ordering a replacement adapter.

Wheel changing ⇨ 270.

## Lock cylinders

Designed to free-wheel if they are forcefully rotated without the correct key or if the correct key is not fully inserted. To reset, turn cylinder with the correct key until its slot is vertical, remove key and then re-insert it. If the cylinder still free-wheels, turn the key through 180° and repeat operation.

## Key with foldaway key section



Press button to extend. To fold the key, first press the button.

## Car Pass

The Car Pass contains security related vehicle data and should therefore be kept in a safe place.

When the vehicle is taken to a workshop, this vehicle data is needed in order to perform certain operations.

## Radio remote control



Used to operate:

- central locking system
- anti-theft locking system
- anti-theft alarm system

- power windows
- sunroof

The radio remote control has a range of approx. 20 metres. It can be restricted by external influences. The hazard warning flashers confirm operation.

Handle with care, protect from moisture and high temperatures and avoid unnecessary operation.

## Fault

If the central locking system cannot be operated with the radio remote control, it may be due to the following:

- Range is exceeded.
- Battery voltage is too low.
- Frequent, repeated operation of the radio remote control while not in range, which will require re-synchronisation.
- Overload of the central locking system by operating at frequent intervals, the power supply is interrupted for a short time.
- Interference from higher-power radio waves from other sources.

Unlocking ⇨ 23.

### Basic settings

Some settings can be changed in the Settings menu in the Info-Display.

Vehicle personalisation ⇨ 130.

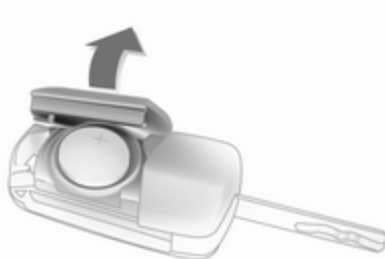
### Radio remote control battery replacement

Replace the battery as soon as the range reduces.



Batteries do not belong in household waste. They must be disposed of at an appropriate recycling collection point.

### Key with foldaway key section



Extend the key and open the unit. Replace the battery (battery type CR 2032), paying attention to the installation position. Close the unit and synchronise.

### Radio remote control synchronisation

After replacing the battery, unlock the door with the key in the driver's door lock. The radio remote control is synchronised by switching on the ignition.

### Memorised settings

Whenever the key is removed from the ignition switch, the following settings are automatically memorised by the key:

- lighting
- Infotainment system
- central locking system
- Sport mode settings
- comfort settings

The saved settings are automatically used the next time the memorised key is inserted into the ignition switch and turned to position 1 ⇨ 165.

A precondition is that **Personalization by driver** is activated in the personal settings of the Graphic-Info-Display. This must be set for each key used. On vehicles equipped with Colour-Info-Display, the personalisation is permanently activated.

Vehicle personalisation ⇨ 130.

## Central locking system

Unlocks and locks doors, load compartment and fuel filler flap.

A pull on an interior door handle unlocks the respective door. Pulling the handle once more opens the door.

### Notice

In the event of an accident in which airbags or belt pretensioners are deployed, the vehicle is automatically unlocked.

### Notice




A short time after unlocking with the remote control, the doors are relocked automatically if no door has been opened.

## Unlocking



Press .

Two settings are selectable:

- To unlock only the driver's door, load compartment and fuel filler flap, press  once. To unlock all doors, press  twice.
- Press  once to unlock all doors, load compartment and fuel filler flap.

The setting can be changed in the Settings menu in the Info-Display. Vehicle personalisation ⇨ 130.

The setting can be saved for the key being used. Memorised settings ⇨ 22.

Unlocking and opening the tailgate ⇨ 25.

## Locking

Close doors, load compartment and fuel filler flap.



Press .

If the driver's door is not closed properly, the central locking system will not work.

### Central locking buttons

Locks or unlocks all doors, the load compartment and fuel filler flap from inside the passenger compartment.




Press  to lock.

Press  to unlock.

### Fault in radio remote control system

#### Unlocking




Manually unlock the driver's door by turning the key in the lock. Switch on the ignition and press the central locking button  to unlock the other doors, load compartment and fuel filler flap. By switching on the ignition, the anti-theft locking system is deactivated.

#### Locking

Manually lock the driver's door by turning the key in the lock.

### Fault in central locking system

#### Unlocking

Manually unlock the driver's door by turning the key in the lock. The other doors can be opened by pulling the interior handle twice. The load compartment and fuel filler flap cannot be opened. To deactivate the anti-theft locking system, switch on the ignition  28.

#### Locking

Push inside locking knob of all doors except driver's door. Then close the driver's door and lock it from the outside with the key. The fuel filler flap and tailgate cannot be locked.

### Automatic locking

This security feature can be configured to automatically lock all doors, load compartment and fuel filler flap as soon as a certain speed is exceeded.

Additionally it is configurable to unlock the driver's door or all doors after the ignition is switched off and the ignition key is removed (manual

transmission) or the selector lever is moved to position **P** (automatic transmission).

Settings can be changed in the Settings menu in the Info-Display.  
Vehicle personalisation ⇨ 130.

The settings can be saved for the key being used ⇨ 22.

## Child locks



### **⚠ Warning**

Use the child locks whenever children are occupying the rear seats.

Using a key or suitable screwdriver, turn the child lock in the rear door to the horizontal position. The door cannot be opened from the inside.

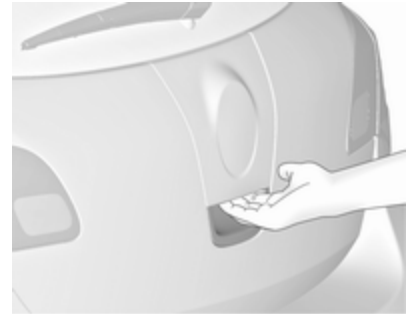
To deactivate, turn the child lock to the vertical position.

## Doors

### Load compartment


#### Tailgate

##### Opening 5-door hatchback




After unlocking, push the touchpad switch below the brand emblem and open the tailgate.

**3-door hatchback**

Press  on radio remote control or push the brand emblem at the bottom half to unlock and open the tailgate.





Pressing  opens the tailgate even if the doors are locked.

**Sports tourer**


After unlocking, push the touchpad switch under the tailgate moulding and open the tailgate.

Central locking system ⇨ 23.

**4-door saloon**

To unlock the boot lid, press  on the remote control for at least 2 seconds, or, to open from the inside, press  in the centre console; the boot lid is opened slightly.



With the doors centrally locked, the boot lid cannot be opened by pressing  in the centre console.

**Closing**



Use one of the interior handles.

Do not push the touchpad switch or the emblem whilst closing as this will unlock the tailgate again.

Central locking system ⇨ 23.

### General hints for operating tailgate

#### Danger

Do not drive with the tailgate open or ajar, e.g. when transporting bulky objects, since toxic exhaust gases, which cannot be seen or smelled, could enter the vehicle. This can cause unconsciousness and even death.

#### Caution

Before opening the tailgate check overhead obstructions, such as a garage door, to avoid damage to the tailgate. Always check the moving area above and behind the tailgate.

#### Notice

The installation of certain heavy accessories onto the tailgate may affect its ability to remain open.

## Vehicle security

### Anti-theft locking system

#### Warning

Do not use the system if there are people in the vehicle! The doors cannot be unlocked from the inside.


The system deadlocks all the doors. All doors must be closed otherwise the system cannot be activated.

If the ignition was on, the driver's door must be opened and closed once so that the vehicle can be secured.

Unlocking the vehicle disables the mechanical anti-theft locking system. This is not possible with the central locking button.

## Activating



Press  on the radio remote control twice within 15 seconds.

## Anti-theft alarm system



The anti-theft alarm system is combined with the central locking system.

It monitors:

- doors, tailgate, bonnet
- passenger compartment including adjoining load compartment

- vehicle inclination, e.g. if it is raised
- ignition

### Activation

- Self-activated 30 seconds after locking the vehicle by pressing  once.
- Directly by pressing  twice briefly within five seconds.



### Notice

Changes to the vehicle interior such as the use of seat covers, and open windows or sunroof, could impair the function of passenger compartment monitoring.

## Activation without monitoring of passenger compartment and vehicle inclination



Switch off the monitoring of passenger compartment and vehicle inclination when animals are being left in the vehicle, because of high volume ultrasonic signals or movements triggering the alarm. Also switch off when the vehicle is on a ferry or train.

1. Close tailgate, bonnet, windows and sunroof.
2. Press . LED in the button  illuminates for a maximum of 10 minutes.

3. Close doors.
4. Activate the anti-theft alarm system.

Status message is displayed in the Driver Information Centre (DIC).

### Status LED



Status LED is integrated in the sensor on top of the instrument panel.

Status during the first 30 seconds of anti-theft alarm system activation:


LED illuminates : test, arming delay  
 LED flashes : doors, tailgate or bonnet not completely closed, or system fault quickly

Status after system is armed:

LED flashes : system is armed slowly

Seek the assistance of a workshop in the event of faults.

### Deactivation


Unlocking the vehicle by pressing  deactivates the anti-theft alarm system.

The system is not deactivated by unlocking the driver's door with the key or with the central locking button in the passenger compartment.

### Alarm

When triggered, the alarm horn sounds and the hazard warning lights flash simultaneously. The number and duration of alarm signals are stipulated by legislation.

The alarm can be silenced by pressing any button on the radio remote control or by switching on the ignition.

The anti-theft alarm system can be deactivated only by pressing  or by switching on the ignition.

A triggered alarm, which has not been interrupted by the driver, will be indicated by the hazard warning lights. They will flash quickly three times the next time the vehicle is unlocked with the radio remote control. Additionally a warning message or a warning code is displayed in the DIC after switching on the ignition.


Vehicle messages ⇨ 124.

If the vehicle's battery is to be disconnected (e.g. for maintenance work), the alarm siren must be deactivated as follows: switch the ignition on then off, then disconnect the vehicle's battery within 15 seconds.

### Immobiliser



The system is part of the ignition switch and checks whether the vehicle is allowed to be started with the key being used.

The immobiliser is activated automatically after the key has been removed from the ignition switch.

If the control indicator  flashes when the ignition is on, there is a fault in the system; the engine cannot be started. Switch off the ignition and repeat the start attempt.

If the control indicator continues flashing, attempt to start the engine using the spare key and seek the assistance of a workshop.

#### Notice

The immobiliser does not lock the doors. You should always lock the vehicle after leaving it and switch on the anti-theft alarm system , 23, , 28.

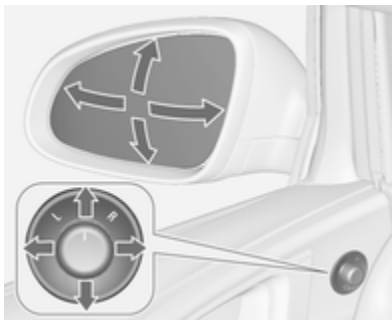
Control indicator  , 117.

## Exterior mirrors

### Convex shape

The convex exterior mirror contains an aspherical area and reduces blind spots. The shape of the mirror makes objects appear smaller, which will affect the ability to estimate distances.

### Electric adjustment



Select the relevant exterior mirror by turning the control to left (L) or right (R). Then swivel the control to adjust the mirror.

In position 0 no mirror is selected.

### Folding mirrors



For pedestrian safety, the exterior mirrors will swing out of their normal mounting position if they are struck with sufficient force. Reposition the mirror by applying slight pressure to the mirror housing.

## Electric folding




Turn control to **0**, then push the control down. Both exterior mirrors will fold.

Push the control down again - both exterior mirrors return to their original position.

If an electrically folded mirror is manually extended, pressing down the control will only electrically extend the other mirror.

## Heated mirrors

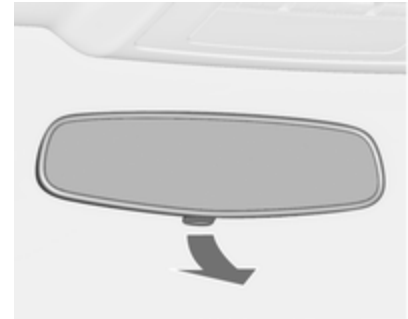


Operated by pressing .

Heating works with the engine running and is switched off automatically after a short time.

## Interior mirrors

### Manual anti-dazzle



To reduce dazzle, adjust the lever on the underside of the mirror housing.

## Automatic anti-dazzle



Dazzle from following vehicles at night is automatically reduced.

## Windows

### Windscreen

#### Heat-reflecting windscreen

The heat-reflecting windscreen has a coating which reflects solar radiation. Also data signals, e.g. from toll stations, might be reflected.



The marked areas on the windscreen are not covered with the coating. Devices for electronic data recording and fee payment must be attached in these areas. Otherwise data recording malfunctions may occur.

### Windscreen stickers

Do not attach stickers such as toll road stickers or similar on the windscreen in the area of the interior mirror. Otherwise the detection zone of the sensor and the view area of the camera in the mirror housing could be restricted.

### Windscreen replacement

#### Caution

If the vehicle has a front-looking camera sensor for the driver assistance systems, it is very important that any windscreen replacement is performed accurately according to Vauxhall specifications. Otherwise, these systems may not work properly and there is a risk of unexpected behaviour and/or messages from these systems.

### Manual windows

The door windows can be opened or closed with the window cranks.

## Power windows

### Warning

Take care when operating the power windows. Risk of injury, particularly to children.

If there are children on the rear seats, switch on the child safety system for the power windows.

Keep a close watch on the windows when closing them.

Ensure that nothing becomes trapped in them as they move.

Switch on ignition to operate power windows. Retained power off ⇨ 165.



Operate the switch for the respective window by pushing to open or pulling to close.

Pushing or pulling gently to the first detent: window moves up or down as long as the switch is operated.

Pushing or pulling firmly to the second detent and then releasing: window moves up or down automatically with safety function enabled. To stop movement, operate the switch once more in the same direction.

## Safety function



If the window glass encounters resistance above the middle of the window during automatic closing, it is immediately stopped and opened again.

## Override safety function

In the event of closing difficulties due to frost or the like, switch on the ignition, then pull the switch to the first detent and hold. The window moves up without safety function enabled. To stop movement, release the switch.

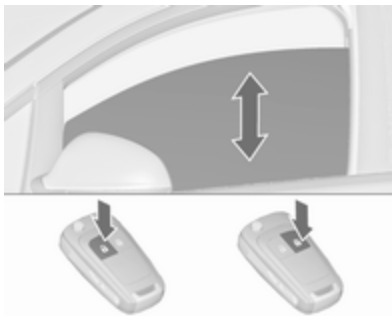
### Child safety system for rear windows



Press  to deactivate rear door power windows; the LED illuminates. To activate, press  again.

### Operating windows from outside

The windows can be operated remotely from outside the vehicle.



Press and hold  to open windows.

Press and hold  to close windows.

Release button to stop window movement.

If the windows are fully opened or closed, the hazard warning lights will flash twice.

### Overload

If the windows are repeatedly operated within short intervals, the window operation is disabled for some time.

### Initialising the power windows

If the windows cannot be closed automatically (e.g. after disconnecting the vehicle battery), a warning message or a warning code is displayed in the Driver Information Centre (DIC).

Vehicle messages ⇨ 124.

Activate the window electronics as follows:

1. Close doors.
2. Switch on ignition.
3. Pull switch until the window is closed and keep pulling for additional 2 seconds.
4. Repeat for each window.



## Heated rear window



Operated by pressing .

Heating works with the engine running and is switched off automatically after a short time.

## Sun visors

The sun visors can be folded down or swivelled to the side to prevent dazzling.

If the sun visors have integral mirrors, the mirror covers should be closed when driving.

A ticket holder is located on the backside of the sun visor.

## Roof

### Sunroof

#### Warning



Take care when operating the sunroof. Risk of injury, particularly to children.



Keep a close watch on the movable parts when operating them. Ensure that nothing becomes trapped in them as they move.

Switch on ignition to operate the sunroof.






### Open or close

Press  or  gently to the first detent: sunroof is opened or closed with safety function enabled as long as the switch is operated.

Press  or  firmly to the second detent and then release: the sunroof is opened or closed automatically with safety function enabled. To stop movement, operate the switch once more.

### Raise or close

Press  or : sunroof is raised or closed automatically with safety function enabled.

If the sunroof is raised, it can be opened in one step by pressing .

### Sunblind

The sunblind is manually operated.


Close or open the sunblind by sliding. When the sunroof is open, the sunblind is always open.

### General hints

#### Safety function

If the sunroof encounters resistance during automatic closing, it is immediately stopped and opened again.


#### Override safety function

In the event of closing difficulties, e.g. due to frost, hold the switch  pressed to the second detent. The sunroof closes with safety function disabled. To stop movement, release the switch.

#### Closing sunroof from outside

The sunroof can be closed remotely from outside the vehicle.



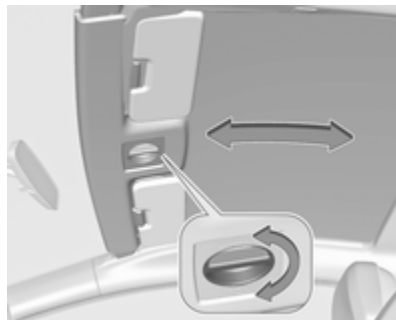
Press and hold  to close the sunroof. Release the button to stop the movement.

#### Initialising after a power failure

After a power failure, it may only be possible to operate the sunroof to a limited extent. Have the system initialised by your workshop.

## Glass panel

### Panorama roof



Turn the handle and move the roof cover to a suitable position.

The roof cover engages in position after releasing the handle.

#### Notice

Close the sun visors before sliding the roof lining.

## Seats, restraints

<b>Head restraints</b> .....	<b>37</b>
Active head restraints .....	38
<b>Front seats</b> .....	<b>39</b>
Seat position .....	39
Seat adjustment .....	39
Seat folding .....	42
Power seat adjustment .....	43
Armrest .....	45
Heating .....	45
<b>Rear seats</b> .....	<b>46</b>
Armrest .....	46
<b>Seat belts</b> .....	<b>46</b>
Three-point seat belt .....	47
<b>Airbag system</b> .....	<b>49</b>
Front airbag system .....	49
Side airbag system .....	50
Curtain airbag system .....	51
Airbag deactivation .....	51
<b>Child restraints</b> .....	<b>53</b>
Child restraint systems .....	53
Child restraint installation locations .....	55
ISOFIX child restraint systems ..	58
Top-tether fastening eyes .....	58

## Head restraints

### Position

#### ⚠ Warning

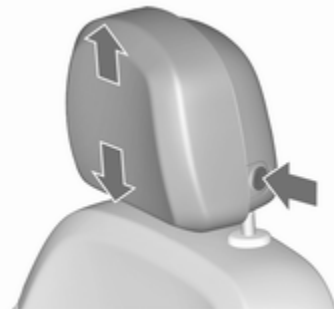
Only drive with the head restraint set to the proper position.



The upper edge of the head restraint should be at upper head level. If this is not possible for extremely tall people, set to highest position, and set to lowest position for small people.

### Adjustment

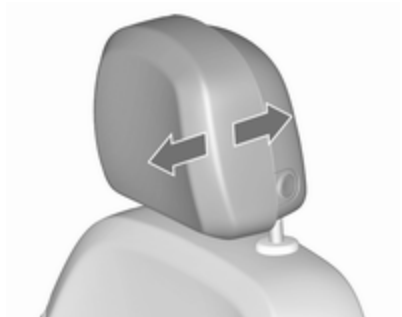
#### Head restraints on front seats



#### Height adjustment

Press release button, adjust height, engage.

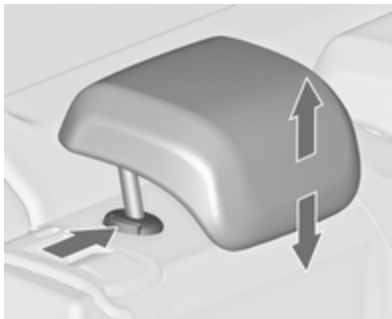
### Horizontal adjustment



To adjust horizontally, pull the head restraint forwards. It engages in several positions.

To return to its rearmost position, pull fully forwards and release.

### Head restraints on rear seats



#### Height adjustment

Pull the head restraint upwards or press the catch to release and push the head restraint downwards.

#### Removal

Press both catches, pull the head restraint upwards and remove.

### Active head restraints

In the event of a rear-end impact, the front parts of the active head restraints are moved slightly

forwards. Thus the head is supported so that the risk of whiplash injury is reduced.

#### Notice

Approved accessories may only be attached if the seat is not in use.

## Front seats

### Seat position

#### ⚠ Warning

Only drive with the seat correctly adjusted.



- Sit with buttocks as far back against the backrest as possible. Adjust the distance between the seat and the pedals so that legs are slightly angled when pressing the pedals. Slide the front passenger seat as far back as possible.

- Sit with shoulders as far back against the backrest as possible. Set the backrest rake so that it is possible to easily reach the steering wheel with arms slightly bent. Maintain contact between shoulders and the backrest when turning the steering wheel. Do not angle the backrest too far back. We recommend a maximum rake of approx. 25°.
- Adjust the steering wheel ↻ 99.
- Set seat height high enough to have a clear field of vision on all sides and of all display instruments. There should be at least one hand of clearance between head and the roof frame. Your thighs should rest lightly on the seat without pressing into it.
- Adjust the head restraint ↻ 37.
- Adjust the height of the seat belt ↻ 47.

- Adjust the thigh support so that there is a space approx. two fingers wide between the edge of the seat and the hollow of the knee.
- Adjust the lumbar support so that it supports the natural shape of the spine.

### Seat adjustment

#### ⚠ Danger

Do not sit nearer than 25 cm from the steering wheel, to permit safe airbag deployment.

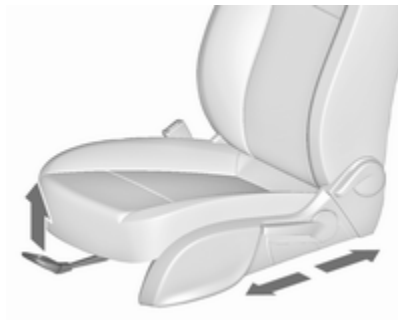
#### ⚠ Warning

Never adjust seats while driving as they could move uncontrollably.

**⚠ Warning**

Never store any objects under the seats.

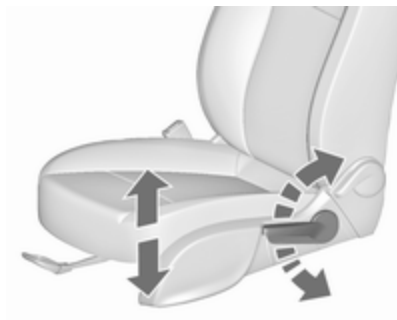
Drive only with engaged seats and backrests.

**Seat positioning**

Pull handle, slide seat, release handle. Try to move the seat back and forth to ensure that the seat is locked in place.

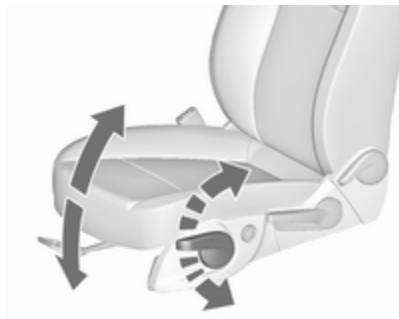
**Seat backrests**

Pull lever, adjust inclination and release lever. Allow the backrest to engage audibly.

**Seat height**

Lever pumping motion  
up : seat higher  
down : seat lower

### Seat inclination

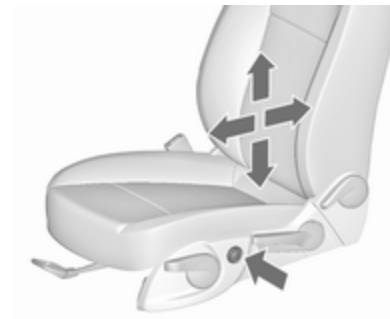


Lever pumping motion

up : front end higher

down : front end lower

### Lumbar support

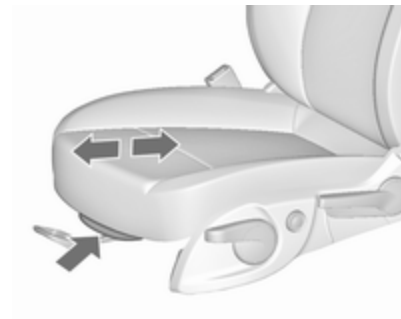


Adjust lumbar support using the four-way switch to suit personal requirements.

Moving support up and down: push switch up or down.

Increasing and decreasing support: push switch forwards or backwards.

### Adjustable thigh support



Pull the lever and slide the thigh support.

## Side bolster, VXR version



Adjust seat width and backrest width using the switches to suit personal requirements.

Operate front rocker switch to change seat width.

Operate rear rocker switch to change backrest width.

## Seat folding

## Caution

When seat height is in highest position, push head restraints down and lift up sun visors before folding backrest forwards.

## Seat folding on manual operated seats



Lift release lever and fold backrest forwards, then slide seat forwards to the stop.

To restore, slide the seat backwards to the stop. Lift backrest to upright position without operating any lever. Ensure backrest engages.

**Warning**

When folding up, ensure that the seat is securely locked in position before driving. Failure to do so may result in personal injury in the event of heavy braking or collision.

The memory function allows the seat to engage in its original position.

Do not operate backrest inclination lever while backrest is tilted forward.

Vehicles with panorama roof: to tilt backrest forward, push head restraints down and lift up sun visors.





The illustration shows the release lever on VXR seat.

### **⚠ Warning**

To avoid injury, move the backrest to an upright position before folding.

### **Seat folding on power seats**



Lift release lever and fold backrest forwards. The seat slides automatically forwards to the stop.

To restore, lift backrest to upright position and engage. The seat slides automatically backwards to the original position.

In case the head restraint of the folded backrest is blocked by the upper windscreen frame, allow the seat to move backwards slightly before lifting up the backrest ↪ 43.

### **Safety function**

If the power seat encounters resistance while sliding forward or rearward, it is immediately stopped and moved back.

### **Overload**

If the folding function is electrically overloaded, the power supply is automatically cut-off for a short time.

### **Power seat adjustment**

#### **⚠ Warning**

Care must be taken when operating the power seats. There is a risk of injury, particularly for children. Objects could become trapped.

Keep a close watch on the seats when adjusting them. Vehicle passengers should be informed accordingly.

**Seat lengthwise position**

Move switch forwards/backwards.

**Seat height**

Move switch upwards/downwards.

**Seat inclination**

Move front of switch upwards/  
downwards.

**Seat backrests**

Turn switch forwards/backwards.

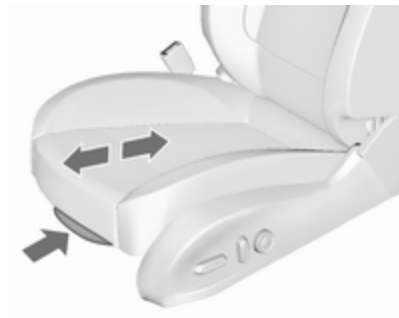
**Lumbar support**

Adjust lumbar support using the four-way switch to suit personal requirements.

Moving support up and down: push switch up or down.

Increasing and decreasing support: push switch forwards or backwards.

### Adjustable thigh support

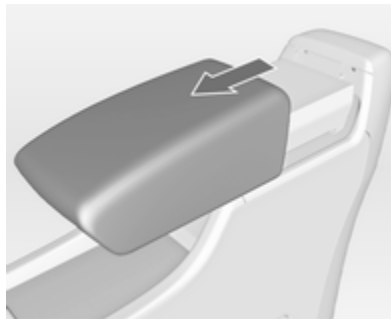


Pull the lever and slide the thigh support.

### Overload

If the seat setting is electrically overloaded, the power supply is automatically cut-off for a short time.

### Armrest




The armrest can be slid forwards by 10 cm. Under the armrest there is a storage compartment.

Armrest storage ↪ 61.

### Heating



Adjust heating to the desired setting by pressing  for the respective seat one or more times. The control indicator in the button indicates the setting.

Prolonged use of the highest setting for people with sensitive skin is not recommended.

Seat heating is operational when engine is running and during an Autostop.

Stop-start system ↪ 166.

## Rear seats

### Armrest



Fold armrest down. The armrest contains cupholders and a storage box.

## Seat belts



The seat belts are locked during heavy acceleration or deceleration of the vehicle holding the occupants in the sitting position. Therefore the risk of injury is considerably reduced.

### **⚠ Warning**

Fasten seat belt before each trip.  
In the event of an accident, people not wearing seat belts endanger their fellow occupants and themselves.

Seat belts are designed to be used by only one person at a time. Child restraint system ⇨ 53.

Periodically check all parts of the belt system for damage, pollution and proper functionality.

Have damaged components replaced. After an accident, have the belts and triggered belt pretensioners replaced by a workshop.


### **⚠ Warning**

The openings in the backrests of the VXR seats are not designed to mount or carry through any kind of additional seat belts.

### **Notice**

Make sure that the belts are not damaged by shoes or sharp-edged objects or are trapped. Prevent dirt from getting into the belt retractors.

### Seat belt reminder

Front seats are equipped with a seat belt reminder, indicated for driver seat by control indicator  in the tachometer ⇨ 112 and for passenger seat by the control indicators in the centre console ⇨ 109.

### Belt force limiters


On the front seats, stress on the body is reduced by the gradual release of the belt during a collision.

### Belt pretensioners

In the event of a head-on or rear-end collision of a certain severity, the front seat belts are tightened.

#### Warning

Incorrect handling (e.g. removal or fitting of belts) can trigger the belt pretensioners.

Deployment of the belt pretensioners is indicated by continuous illumination of control indicator  ⇨ 112.

Triggered belt pretensioners must be replaced by a workshop. Belt pretensioners can only be triggered once.

#### Notice

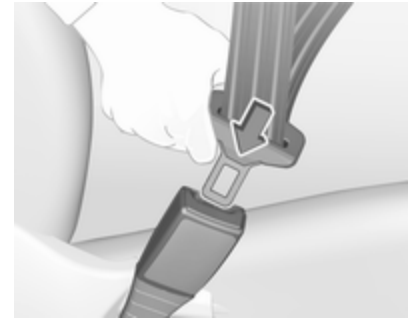
Do not affix or install accessories or other objects that may interfere with the operation of the belt pretensioners. Do not make any modifications to belt pretensioner components as this will invalidate the vehicle type approval.

### Three-point seat belt

#### Fastening



Withdraw the belt from the retractor, guide it untwisted across the body and insert the latch plate into the buckle. Tighten the lap belt regularly whilst driving by pulling the shoulder belt.



Loose or bulky clothing prevents the belt from fitting snugly. Do not place objects such as handbags or mobile phones between the belt and your body.

**⚠ Warning**

The belt must not rest against hard or fragile objects in the pockets of your clothing.

Seat belt reminder  ↗ 112.

**Height adjustment**

1. Pull belt out slightly.
2. Shift the height adjustment upwards or press button to disengage and push the height adjustment downwards.



Adjust the height so that the belt lies across the shoulder. It must not lie across the throat or upper arm.

Do not adjust while driving.

**Removing**

To release belt, press red button on belt buckle.

**Seat belts on the rear seats**

The seat belt for the rear centre seat can only be withdrawn from the retractor if the backrest is engaged in upright position.

## Using the seat belt while pregnant



### **⚠ Warning**

The lap belt must be positioned as low as possible across the pelvis to prevent pressure on the abdomen.

## Airbag system

The airbag system consists of a number of individual systems depending on the scope of equipment.

When triggered, the airbags inflate within milliseconds. They also deflate so quickly that it is often unnoticeable during the collision.

### **⚠ Warning**

If handled improperly the airbag systems can be triggered in an explosive manner.

### **Notice**

The airbag systems and belt pretensioner control electronics are located in the centre console area. Do not put any magnetic objects in this area.



Do not affix any objects onto the airbag covers and do not cover them with other materials.

Each airbag is triggered only once. Have deployed airbags replaced by a workshop. Furthermore, it may be

necessary to have the steering wheel, the instrument panel, parts of the panelling, the door seals, handles and the seats replaced.

Do not make any modifications to the airbag system as this will invalidate the vehicle type approval.

When the airbags inflate escaping hot gases may cause burns.

Control indicator  for airbag systems  112.

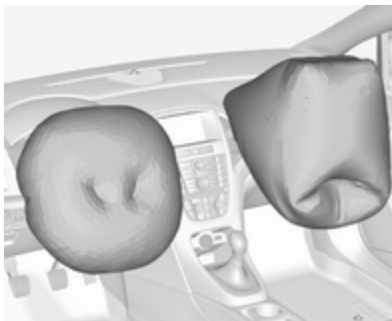
## Front airbag system

The front airbag system consists of one airbag in the steering wheel and one in the instrument panel on the front passenger side. These can be identified by the word **AIRBAG**.



Additionally there is a warning label on the side of the instrument panel, visible when the front passenger door is open, or on the front passenger sun visor.

The front airbag system is triggered in the event of a front-end impact of a certain severity. The ignition must be switched on.



The inflated airbags cushion the impact, thereby reducing the risk of injury to the upper body and head of the front seat occupants considerably.

#### **⚠ Warning**

Optimum protection is only provided when the seat is in the proper position.

Seat position ⇨ 39.

Keep the area in which the airbag inflates clear of obstructions.

Fit the seat belt correctly and engage securely. Only then is the airbag able to protect.

## Side airbag system



The side airbag system consists of an airbag in each front seat backrest. This can be identified by the word **AIRBAG**.

The side airbag system is triggered in the event of a side impact of a certain severity. The ignition must be switched on.





The inflated airbags cushion the impact, thereby reducing the risk of injury to the upper body and pelvis in the event of a side-on collision considerably.

#### ⚠ Warning

Keep the area in which the airbag inflates clear of obstructions.

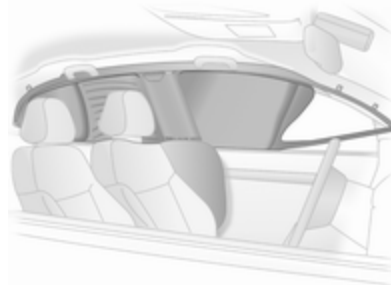
#### Notice

Only use protective seat covers that have been approved for the vehicle. Be careful not to cover the airbags.

## Curtain airbag system

The curtain airbag system consists of an airbag in the roof frame on each side. This can be identified by the word **AIRBAG** on the roof pillars.

The curtain airbag system is triggered in the event of a side-on impact of a certain severity. The ignition must be switched on.



The inflated airbags cushion the impact, thereby reducing the risk of injury to the head in the event of a side-on impact considerably.

#### ⚠ Warning

Keep the area in which the airbag inflates clear of obstructions.

The hooks on the handles in the roof frame are only suitable for hanging up light articles of clothing, without coat hangers. Do not keep any items in these clothes.




## Airbag deactivation

The front passenger airbag system must be deactivated if a child restraint system is to be fitted on this seat. The side airbag and curtain airbag systems, the belt pretensioners and all driver airbag systems will remain active.



The front passenger airbag system can be deactivated via a key-operated switch on the right side of the instrument panel.

Use the ignition key to choose the position:


-  OFF : front passenger airbag is deactivated and will not inflate in the event of a collision. Control indicator  OFF illuminates continuously in the centre console. A child restraint system can be installed in accordance with the chart **Child restraint installation locations** ⇨ 55. No adult person is allowed to occupy the front passenger seat
-  ON : front passenger airbag is active. A child restraint system must not be installed

### Danger

Risk of fatal injury for a child using a child restraint system on a seat with activated front passenger airbag.

Risk of fatal injury for an adult person on a seat with deactivated front passenger airbag.



If the control indicator  illuminates for approx. 60 seconds after the ignition is switched on, the front passenger airbag system will inflate in the event of a collision.

If both control indicators are illuminated at the same time, there is a system failure. The status of the system is not discernible, therefore no person is allowed to occupy the front passenger seat. Contact a workshop immediately.

Change status only when the vehicle is stopped with the ignition off.

Status remains until the next change.

Control indicator for airbag deactivation ⇨ 112.

## Child restraints

### Child restraint systems

We recommend the Vauxhall child restraint system which is tailored specifically to the vehicle.

When a child restraint system is being used, pay attention to the following usage and installation instructions and also those supplied with the child restraint system.

Always comply with local or national regulations. In some countries, the use of child restraint systems is forbidden on certain seats.

#### Warning

When using a child restraint system on the front passenger seat, the airbag systems for the front passenger seat must be deactivated; if not, the triggering of the airbags poses a risk of fatal injury to the child.

This is especially the case if rear-facing child restraint systems are used on the front passenger seat.

Airbag deactivation ⇨ 51.

Airbag label ⇨ 49.

### Selecting the right system

The rear seats are the most convenient location to fasten a child restraint system.

Children should travel facing rearwards in the vehicle as long as possible. This makes sure that the child's backbone, which is still very weak, is under less strain in the event of an accident.

Suitable are restraint systems that comply with valid UN ECE regulations. Check local laws and regulations for mandatory use of child restraint systems.

Ensure that the child restraint system to be installed is compatible with the vehicle type.

Ensure that the mounting location of the child restraint system within the vehicle is correct, see following tables.

Allow children to enter and exit the vehicle only on the side facing away from the traffic.

When the child restraint system is not in use, secure the seat with a seat belt or remove it from the vehicle.

**Notice**

Do not affix anything on the child restraint systems and do not cover them with any other materials.

A child restraint system which has been subjected to stress in an accident must be replaced.

## Child restraint installation locations

### Permissible options for fitting a child restraint system

Weight and age class	On front passenger seat		On rear outboard seats	On rear centre seat
	activated airbag	deactivated airbag		
<b>Group 0: up to 10 kg</b> or approx. 10 months	X	U <sup>1</sup>	U	U
<b>Group 0+: up to 13 kg</b> or approx. 2 years	X	U <sup>1</sup>	U	U
<b>Group I: 9 to 18 kg</b> or approx. 8 months to 4 years	X	U <sup>1</sup>	U	U
<b>Group II: 15 to 25 kg</b> or approx. 3 to 7 years	X	X	U	U
<b>Group III: 22 to 36 kg</b> or approx. 6 to 12 years	X	X	U	U

<sup>1</sup> : if the child restraint system is being secured using a three-point seat belt, move seat height adjustment to uppermost position and ensure that vehicle seat belt runs forwards from the upper anchorage point. Adjust seat backrest inclination as far as necessary to a vertical position to ensure that the belt is tight on the buckle side.

U : universal suitability in conjunction with three-point seat belt.

X : no child restraint system permitted in this weight class.

## Permissible options for fitting an ISOFIX child restraint system

Weight class	Size class	Fixture	On front passenger seat	On rear outboard seats	On rear centre seat
<b>Group 0: up to 10 kg</b> or approx. 10 months	E	ISO/R1	X	IL	X
<b>Group 0+: up to 13 kg</b> or approx. 2 years	E	ISO/R1	X	IL	X
	D	ISO/R2	X	IL	X
	C	ISO/R3	X	IL	X
<b>Group I: 9 to 18 kg</b> or approx. 8 months to 4 years	D	ISO/R2	X	IL	X
	C	ISO/R3	X	IL	X
	B	ISO/F2	X	IL, IUf	X
	B1	ISO/F2X	X	IL, IUf	X
<b>Group II: 15 to 25 kg</b> or approx. 3 to 7 years	A	ISO/F3	X	IL, IUf	X
			X	IL	X
<b>Group III: 22 to 36 kg</b> or approx. 6 to 12 years			X	IL	X

- 
- IL : suitable for particular ISOFIX restraint systems of the 'specific-vehicle', 'restricted' or 'semi-universal' categories.  
The ISOFIX restraint system must be approved for the specific vehicle type.
- IUF : suitable for ISOFIX forward-facing child restraint systems of universal category approved for use in this weight class.
- X : no ISOFIX child restraint system approved in this weight class.

### **ISOFIX size class and seat device**

- A – ISO/F3 : forward-facing child restraint system for children of maximum size in the weight class 9 to 18 kg
- B – ISO/F2 : forward-facing child restraint system for smaller children in the weight class 9 to 18 kg
- B1 – ISO/F2X : forward-facing child restraint system for smaller children in the weight class 9 to 18 kg
- C – ISO/R3 : rear-facing child restraint system for children of maximum size in the weight class up to 18 kg
- D – ISO/R2 : rear-facing child restraint system for smaller children in the weight class up to 18 kg
- E – ISO/R1 : rear-facing child restraint system for young children in the weight class up to 13 kg

## ISOFIX child restraint systems




Fasten vehicle-approved ISOFIX child restraint systems to the ISOFIX mounting brackets. Specific vehicle ISOFIX child restraint system positions are marked in the table by IL.

ISOFIX mounting brackets are indicated by a label on the backrest.

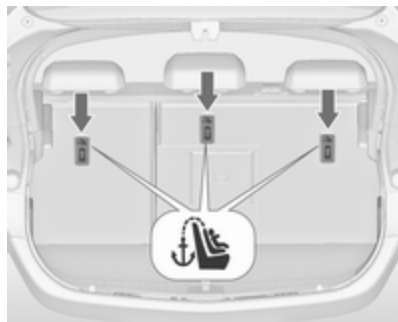
## Top-tether fastening eyes

Depending on country specific equipment, the vehicle might have two or three fastening eyes.

Top-Tether fastening eyes are marked with the symbol  for a child seat.



On Saloon version, open the flap of the required fastening eye on the placement area behind the head restraints, marked by the child seat symbol.



On Hatchback and Sports Tourer, fastening eyes are on the backside of rear seats.

In addition to the ISOFIX mounting, fasten the Top-Tether strap to the Top-Tether fastening eyes. The strap must run between the two guide rods of the head restraint.

ISOFIX child restraint systems of universal category positions are marked in the table by IUF.



## Storage

<b>Storage compartments</b> .....	<b>59</b>
Glovebox .....	59
Cupholders .....	59
Front storage .....	60
Underseat storage .....	61
Armrest storage .....	61
Centre console storage .....	62
Rear carrier system .....	63
<b>Load compartment</b> .....	<b>80</b>
Rear storage .....	84
Load compartment cover .....	84
Rear floor storage cover .....	86
Lashing eyes .....	89
Cargo management system .....	89
Safety net .....	91
Warning triangle .....	92
First aid kit .....	93
<b>Roof rack system</b> .....	<b>94</b>
Roof rack .....	94
<b>Loading information</b> .....	<b>95</b>

## Storage compartments

### ⚠ Warning

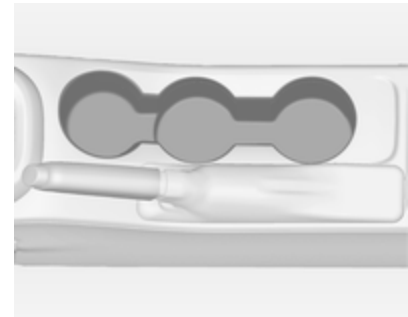
Do not store heavy or sharp objects in the storage compartments. Otherwise, the storage compartment lid could open and vehicle occupants could be injured by objects being thrown around in the event of hard braking, a sudden change in direction or an accident.

## Glovebox

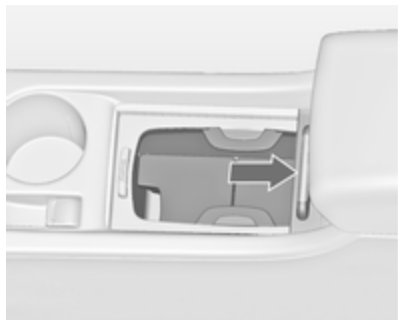


The glovebox features a pen holder, a credit card holder, a coin holder and an adapter for the locking wheel nuts. The glovebox should be closed whilst driving.

## Cupholders



Cupholders are located in the centre console.

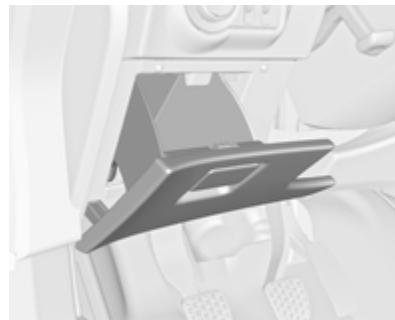


Depending on the version, cupholders are located under a cover in the centre console. Slide cover backwards. Bottles can be stowed after folding up the intermediate shelf ⇨ 62.



Additional cupholders are located in the rear armrest. Fold down the armrest.

## Front storage



A storage compartment is located next to the steering wheel.

## Underseat storage



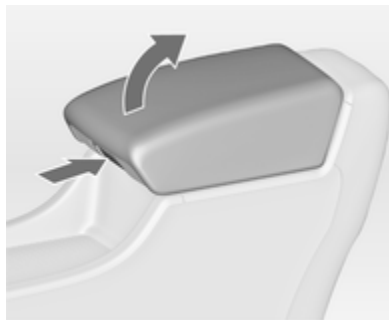
Press button in the recess and pull out drawer. Maximum load: 3 kg. To close, push in and engage.

On version with rear carrier system ↻ 63, the tyre repair kit is stowed in the drawer.

Tyre repair kit ↻ 267.

## Armrest storage

### Storage under the front armrest



Press button to fold up the armrest. The armrest must be in rearmost position.

## Storage in the rear armrest

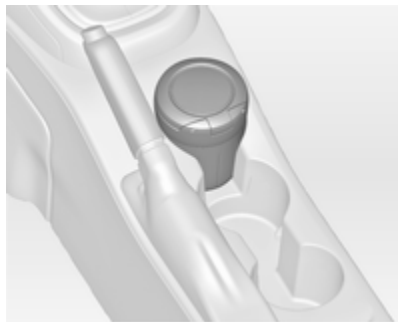


Fold down armrest and open cover.

Close cover before folding the armrest up.

## Centre console storage

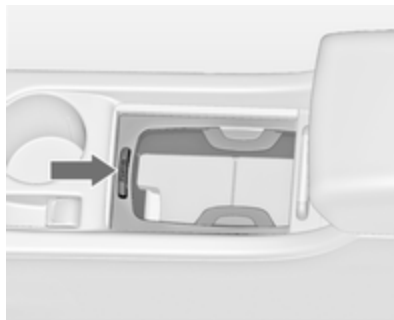
### Front console



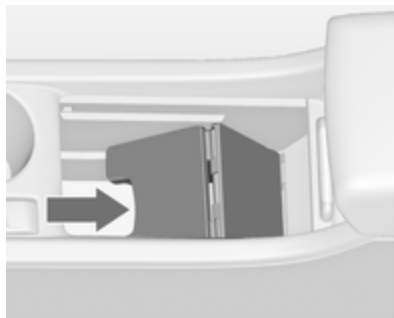
The storage container can be used to store small items.

Depending on the version, a storage compartment is located under a cover.

Slide cover backwards.



Press button to remove the frame of the cupholder. The frame can be stowed in the glovebox.



A further storage compartment is located under the intermediate shelf. Fold up the intermediate shelf and fix it in the vertical position. The frame of the cupholder can be reintegrated to stow bottles.

### Rear console



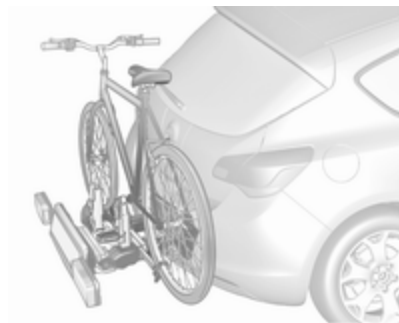
Pull out the drawer.

#### Caution

Do not use for ash or for other combustible items.

## Rear carrier system

### Rear carrier system for two bicycles



The rear carrier system (Flex-Fix system) allows bicycles to be attached to a pull-out carrier integrated into the vehicle floor. The transportation of other objects is not permitted.

The maximum load of the rear carrier system is 40 kg. The maximum load per bicycle is 20 kg.

The wheelbase of a bicycle must not exceed 1.2 metres. Otherwise the secure fastening of a bicycle is not possible.

If not in use, the carrier system must be slid back into the vehicle floor.

There must not be any objects on the bicycles that could become loose during transportation.

#### Caution

Do not attach bicycles with carbon pedal cranks to bicycle carriers. The bicycles might get damaged.

#### Extending

Open the tailgate.

#### ⚠ Warning

No-one should be in the extension zone of the rear carrier system, risk of injury.



Pull release lever up. The system disengages and travels quickly out of the bumper.



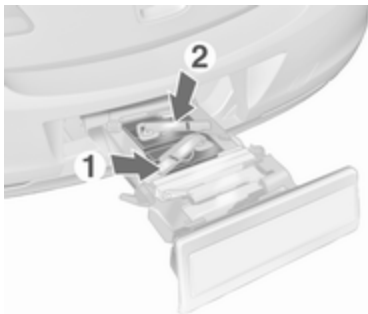
Completely pull out the rear carrier system until you hear it engage.

Ensure that it is not possible to push in the rear carrier system without pulling the release lever again

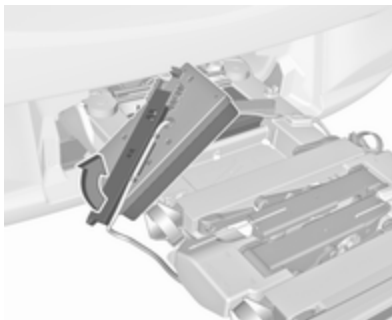
### **⚠ Warning**

It is only permissible to fit objects to the rear carrier system if the system has been correctly engaged. If the rear carrier system will not engage correctly, do not fit objects to the system and slide the system back. Seek the assistance of a workshop.

### **Install the tail lamps**



First remove the rear (1), then the front (2) tail lamp from the recesses.



Open out the lamp support on the back of the tail lamp completely.



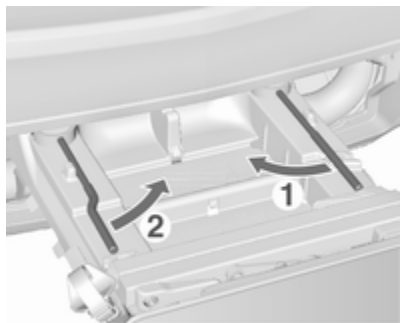
Push the clamping lever down and push the lamp support into the retainer until it engages.

Perform this procedure for both tail lamps.

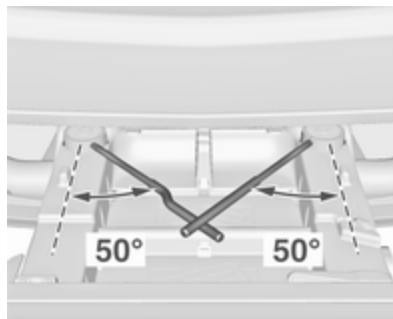


Check the cable and lamp position to make sure these are correctly installed and are securely located.

### Lock the rear carrier system



Swivel the right clamping lever (1) first, followed by the left clamping lever (2), until a resistance is noticeable.

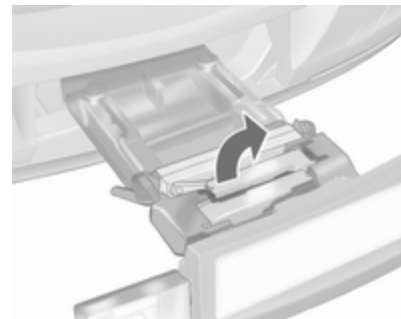


The rear carrier system is locked when the clamping levers are swivelled by approx. 50°. Otherwise safe functionality is not guaranteed.

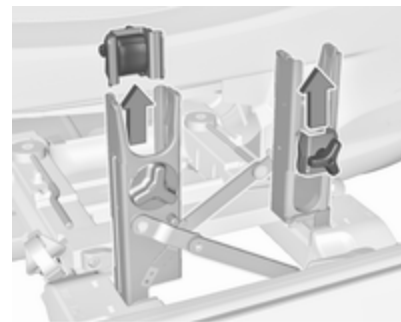
#### Notice

Close the tailgate.

### Unfold pedal crank recesses

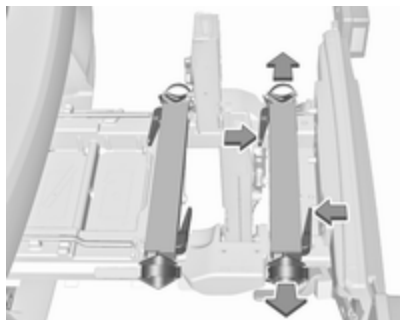


Fold one or both pedal crank recesses upwards until the diagonal support engages.

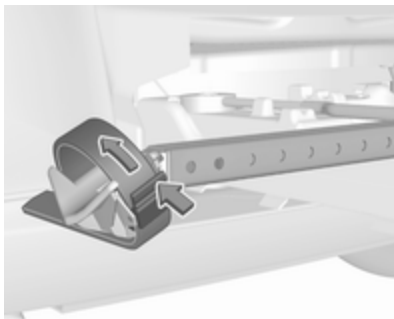


Remove the pedal crank mounts from the pedal crank recesses.

### Adapting the rear carrier system to a bicycle

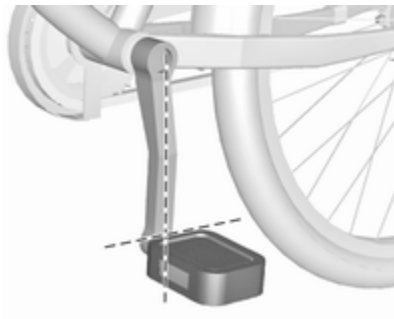


Press the release lever and withdraw the wheel recesses.



Push the release lever on the strap retainer and remove the strap retainer.

### Prepare the bicycle for attachment



### Notice

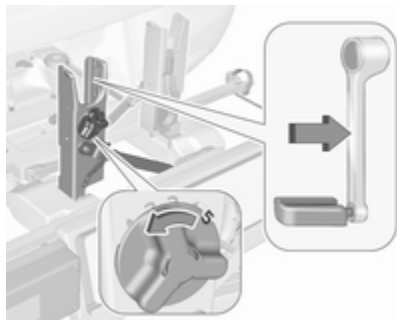
The maximum width for the pedal crank is 38.3 mm and the maximum depth is 14.4 mm.

Rotate the left pedal (without a chain cog) vertically downwards. The pedal on the left pedal crank must be horizontal.

The front bicycle must have its front wheel facing left.

The rear bicycle must have its front wheel facing right.

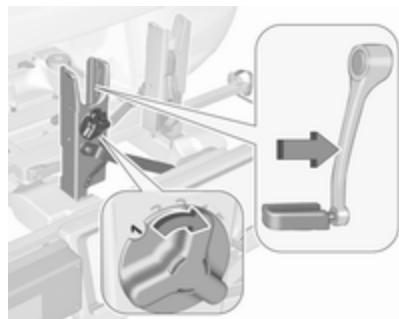
### Attaching a bicycle to the rear carrier system



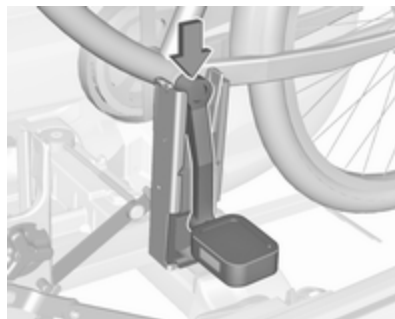


With the rotary lever on the pedal crank recess, roughly adapt the adjustable pedal crank unit to the protrusion of the pedal crank.

If the bicycle has straight pedal cranks, unscrew the pedal crank unit completely (position 5).



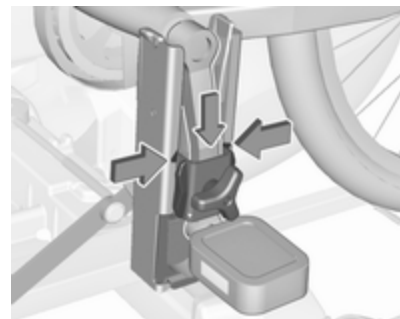
If the bicycle has curved pedal cranks, screw in the pedal crank unit all the way (position 1).



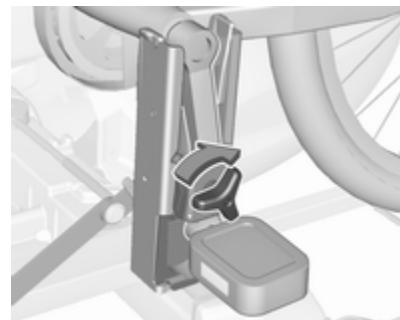
Put on the bicycle. The pedal crank here must be placed in the pedal crank recess opening, as shown in the illustration.

#### Caution

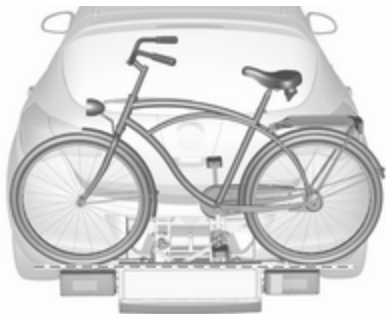
Make sure that the pedal does not touch the surface of the rear end carrier. Otherwise the crankset might be damaged during the transport.



Insert pedal crank mount into outer rail of each pedal crank recess from above and slide downwards until at least underneath the notching.



Attach the pedal crank by rotating the attachment screw on the pedal crank mount.



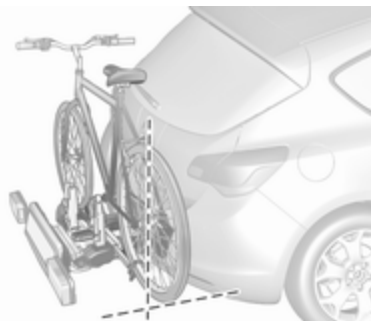
Place the wheel recesses such that the bicycle is more or less horizontal. Here, the distance between the pedals and the tailgate should be at least 5 cm.

Both bicycle tyres must be in the wheel recesses.

### Caution

Make sure to pull out the wheel recesses as far as necessary to have both bicycle tyres placed in

the recesses. Otherwise a horizontal mounting of the bicycle is not ensured. Disregard could lead to damage of the bicycle wheels caused by hot exhaust fumes.

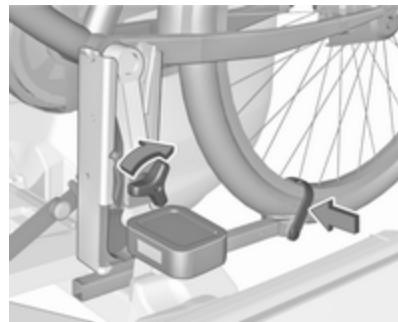


Align the bicycle in the longitudinal direction of the vehicle: Slightly loosen the pedal mount.

Place the bicycle upright using the rotary lever on the pedal crank recess.

If the two bicycles obstruct one another, the relative positions of the bicycles can be adapted by adjusting the wheel recesses and the rotary

lever on the pedal crank recess until the bicycles no longer touch one another. Make sure there is sufficient clearance from the vehicle.



Tighten the attachment screw for the pedal bearing mount to its maximum point by hand.

Secure both bicycle wheels to the wheel recesses using the strap retainers.

Check the bicycle to make sure it is secure.

### Caution

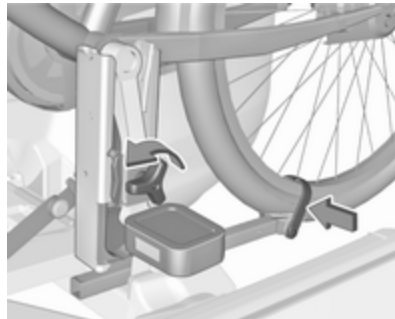
Ensure gap between bicycle and vehicle is at least 5 cm. If necessary, loosen handlebar and swivel sideways.

The settings for the wheel recesses and on the rotary lever on the pedal crank recess should be noted and saved for each bicycle. Correct presetting will facilitate refitting of the bicycle.



It is recommended to attach a warning sign at the rearmost bicycle to increase visibility.

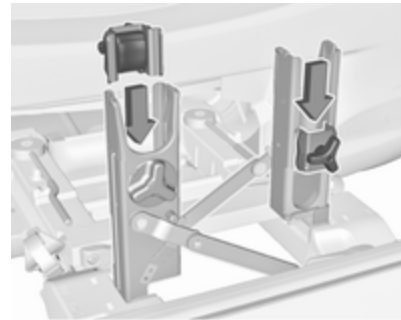
### Removing a bicycle from the rear carrier system



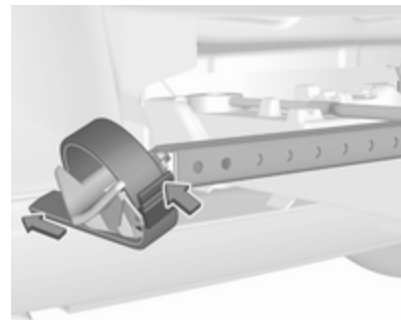
Undo strap retainers on both bicycle tyres.

Hold on to the bicycle, loosen the attachment screw for the pedal bearing mount, then lift the pedal bearing mount to remove it.

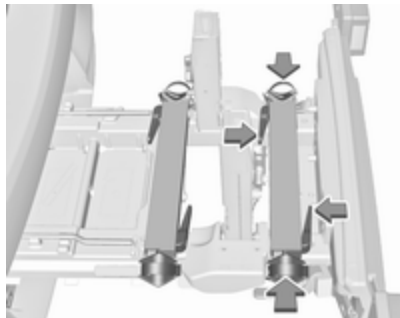
### Retracting the rear carrier system



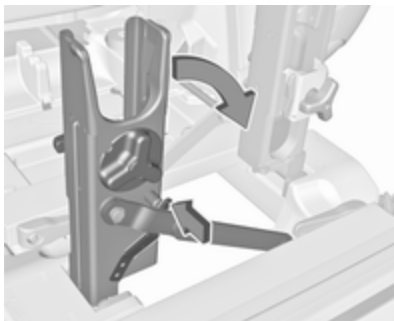
Push the pedal crank mounts into the pedal crank recess, as shown in the illustration.



Insert the strap retainer and pull tightly downwards as far as possible.



Press release lever and slide in wheel recesses all the way as far as they will go.



Disengage the locking lever on the diagonal support and fold both pedal crank recesses down.

**⚠ Warning**

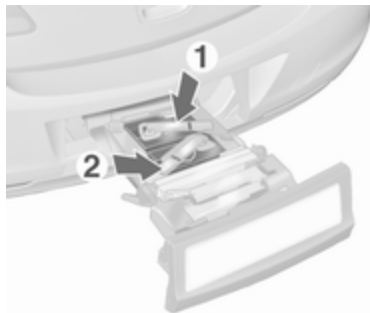
Risk of pinching.



Swivel first the left clamping lever (1), followed by the right clamping lever (2), until they stop.



Push the clamping lever down and pull both lamp supports out of the recesses.



Fold in the lamp supports on the backs of the tail lamps.

First place the front (1) tail lamp, then the rear (2) tail lamp in the recesses and push down as far as possible. Push cables all the way into all guides in order to prevent damage.

Open the tailgate.



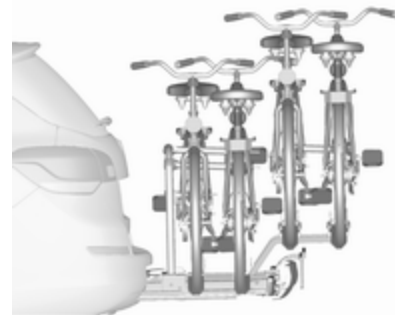
Push the release lever up and hold. Lift the system slightly and push it into the bumper until it engages.

Release lever must return to original position.

#### **⚠ Warning**

If the system cannot be correctly engaged, please seek the assistance of a workshop.

### Rear carrier system for four bicycles



The rear carrier system (Flex-Fix system) allows two bicycles to be attached to a pull-out carrier integrated into the vehicle floor. It is possible to attach two further bicycles on an adapter. The transportation of other objects is not permitted.

The maximum load of the rear carrier system is 80 kg with attached adapter and 60 kg without attached adapter. The maximum load per bicycle on the pull-out carrier is 30 kg. This allows

the attachment of electrically-powered bicycles to the pull-out carrier. The maximum load per bicycle on the adapter is 20 kg.

The wheelbase of a bicycle must not exceed 1.15 metres. Otherwise the secure fastening of a bicycle is not possible.

If not in use, the carrier system must be slid back into the vehicle floor.

There must not be any objects on the bicycles that could become loose during transportation.

### Caution

If the rear carrier system is extended and the vehicle is fully loaded, the chassis clearance will be reduced.

Drive carefully whenever the road has a strong inclination or when driving over a ramp, bump, etc.

### Caution

Consult your bicycle dealer before attaching bicycles with carbon frames. The bicycles might get damaged.

### Extending

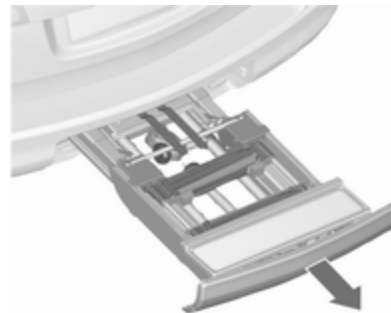
Open the tailgate.

### ⚠ Warning

No-one should be in the extension zone of the rear carrier system, risk of injury.



Pull release lever up. The system disengages and travels quickly out of the bumper.



Completely pull out the rear carrier system until you hear it engage.

Ensure that it is not possible to push in the rear carrier system without pulling the release lever again.

### ⚠ Warning

It is only permissible to fit objects to the rear carrier system if the system has been correctly engaged. If the rear carrier system will not engage correctly, do not fit

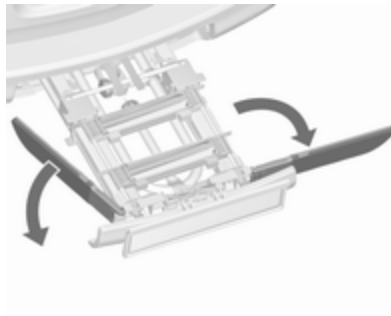
objects to the system and slide the system back. Seek the assistance of a workshop.

### Unfold number plate holder



Lift the number plate holder and fold it backwards.

### Fold out tail lamps



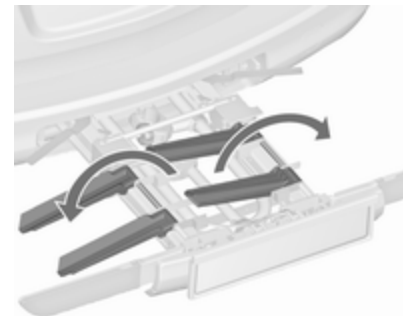
Fold out both tail lamps.

### Lock the rear carrier system

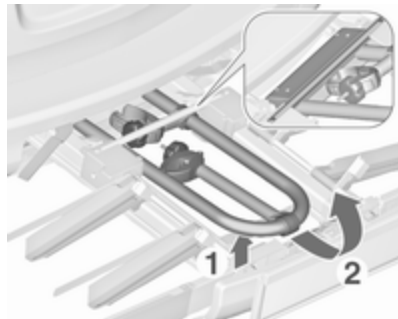


Swivel both clamping levers sideways as far as they will go. Otherwise safe functionality is not guaranteed.

### Fold out wheel recesses

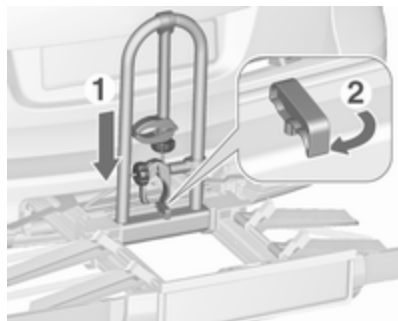


Fold out both wheel recesses.

**Assembling the bicycle rack**

Lift the rack at the rear (1) and pull it backwards.

Fold up the rack (2).

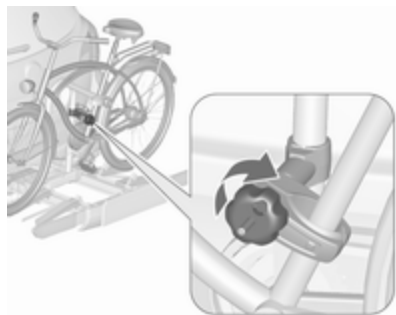


Push down the rack (1) and swivel handle (2) backwards to engage.

**Attaching the first bicycle**

1. Rotate the pedals into position (as shown in the illustration) and put the bicycle on the foremost wheel recess.

Make sure that the bicycle stands centrally on the wheel recesses.



2. Attach the short mounting bracket to the bicycle frame. Turn the knob clockwise to fasten.





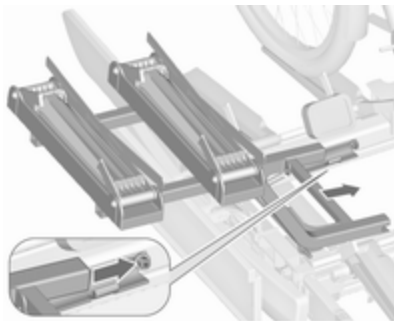
- Secure both bicycle wheels to the wheel recesses using the strap retainers.
- Check the bicycle to make sure it is secure.

### Caution

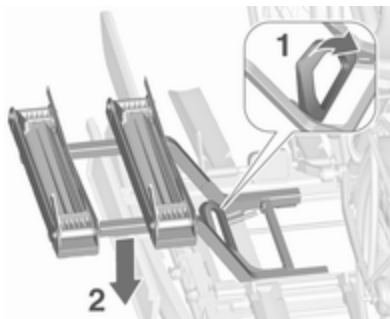
Ensure gap between bicycle and vehicle is at least 5 cm. If necessary, loosen handlebar and swivel sideways.

### Attaching the adapter

When carrying more than two bicycles, the adapter must be fixed before the second bicycle is attached.



- Apply the adapter to the rear carrier system as shown in the illustration.



- Turn the lever (1) forwards and hold, then lower the adapter (2) at the rear.
- Release lever and check if the adapter is engaged securely.

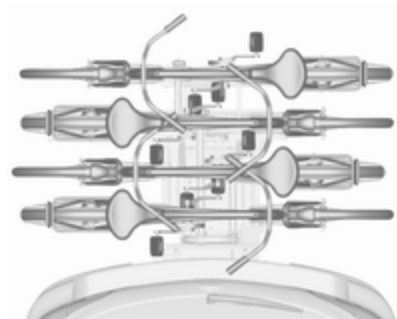


- Guide the strap attached to the adapter underneath the lever for folding back the rear carrier system. Fasten the strap.

### Attaching further bicycles

The attachment of further bicycles is similar to the attachment of the first bicycle. Additionally, some steps must be considered:

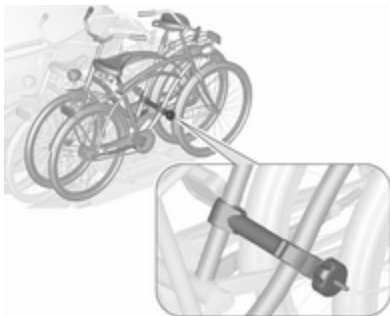
- Before putting on the bicycle, always unfold the wheel recesses for the next bicycle if necessary.
- Always rotate the pedals into an appropriate position before putting on the bicycle.



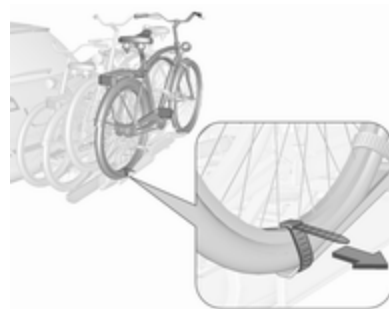
3. Position the bicycles on the rear carrier system alternately aligned to the left and to the right.
4. Align the bicycles to the one attached before. The wheel hubs of the bicycles must not touch each other.
5. Attach the bicycles with mounting brackets and strap retainers as described for the first bicycle. The mounting brackets should be fixed in parallel.

Use the long mounting bracket to attach the second bicycle to the rack.

Use the longer accessory mounting bracket to attach the third bicycle to the rack.



Use the short accessory mounting bracket to attach the fourth bicycle. The bracket must be fixed between the frames of the third and fourth bicycle.



6. Additionally, secure both bicycle wheels of the fourth bicycle to the wheel recesses using the tensioning straps.

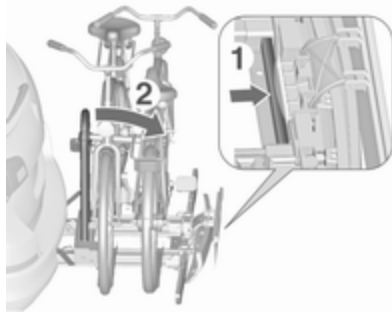


It is recommended to attach a warning sign at the rearmost bicycle to increase visibility.

### Fold the rear carrier system backwards

The rear carrier system can be folded backwards to get access to the load compartment.

- Without attached adapter:



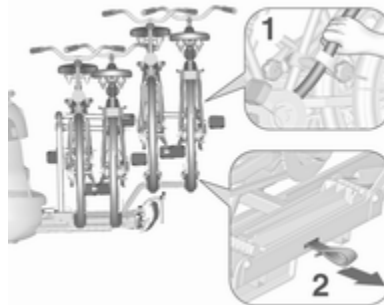
Push the lever (1) to disengage and hold.

Pull the rack (2) backwards to fold the rear carrier system.

- With attached adapter:

### ⚠ Warning

Take care when disengaging the rear carrier system as it will tilt backwards. Risk of injury.



Hold frame (1) of rearmost bicycle with one hand and pull the loop (2) to disengage.

Hold rearmost bicycle with both hands and fold the rear carrier system backwards.

To increase visibility, the tail lights of the vehicle are activated when the rear carrier system is folded back.

### ⚠ Warning

When folding the rear carrier system forwards again, take care that the system is engaged securely.

### Removing bicycles

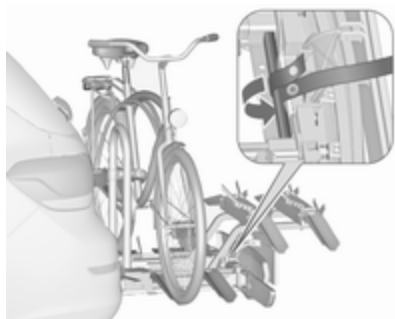
Undo strap retainers on both bicycle tyres.

Turn knob anti-clockwise and remove mounting brackets.

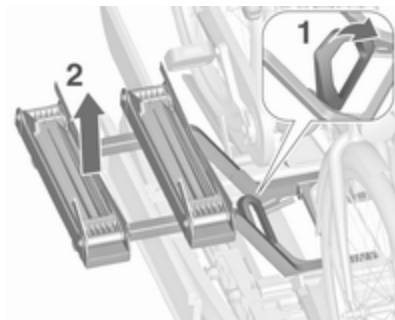
### Detaching adapter

Detach the adapter before removing the last bicycle left on the rear carrier system.

1. Fold in wheel recesses.

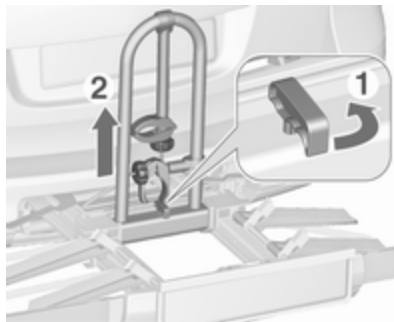


2. Unbutton the strap.



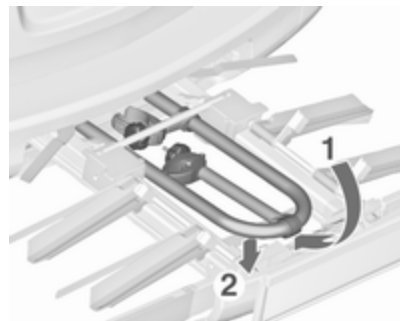
3. Turn the lever (1) forwards and hold.
4. Lift the adapter (2) at the rear and remove.

### Disassembling the bicycle rack



Arrange mounting brackets as shown in the illustration.

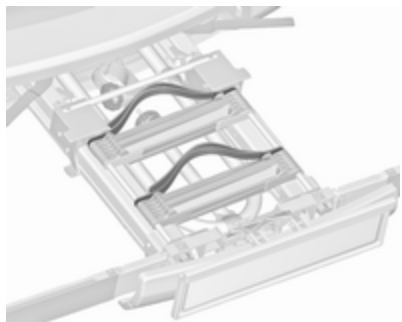
Swivel handle (1) forwards to disengage and lift the rack (2).



Fold the rack backwards, then push forwards until it stops (1). Press the rack down at the rear (2).

### Fold in wheel recesses

Fold in both wheel recesses.



Stow the strap retainers accurately.

### Unlock the rear carrier system



Swivel both clamping levers inwards as far as they will go.

### Fold in tail lamps

Swivel in both tail lamps.

### Fold in number plate holder

Lift the number plate holder and fold it forwards.

### Retracting the rear carrier system

#### Caution

Take care that all foldable parts, e.g. wheel recesses and mounting brackets, are stowed accurately. Otherwise the rear carrier system may get damaged when trying to retract it.



Push the release lever up and hold. Lift the system slightly and push it into the bumper until it engages.

Release lever must return to original position.

#### **Warning**

If the system cannot be correctly engaged, please seek the assistance of a workshop.

## Load compartment

The rear seat backrest is divided into two parts. Both parts can be folded down.

### Load compartment extension, 3-door and 5-door hatchback, 4-door saloon

- Only 3-door and 5-door hatchback: remove the load compartment cover if necessary.
- Press and hold the catch to push the head restraints down ⇨ 37.
- Fold up the rear armrest.



- Guide the seat belts through side supports to protect them against damage. When folding the backrests, pull the seat belts along with them.
- Pull the release lever on one or both sides and fold down the backrests onto the seat cushion.



- Take the seat belt out of the seat backrest guide and put it behind the retainer as shown in the illustration.

To fold up, raise the backrests and guide them into an upright position until they engage audibly.

Ensure that the seat belts of the outboard seats are placed in the corresponding belt guides.

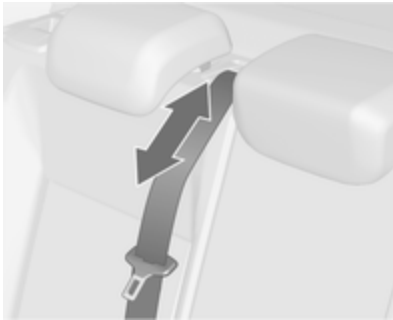


The backrests are properly engaged when the red marks on both sides near the release lever are no longer visible.

### **⚠ Warning**

When folding up, ensure that backrests are securely locked in position before driving. Failure to do so may result in personal injury

or damage to the load or vehicle in the event of hard braking or a collision.



The seat belt of the centre seat could be blocked when the backrest is folded up too quickly. To unlock the retractor, push in the seat belt or pull it out by approx. 20 mm then release.

### Load compartment extension, Sports tourer

#### Folding down rear backrests

- Remove the load compartment cover if necessary.

- Press and hold the catch to push the head restraints down ↻ 37.
- Fold up the rear armrest.



- Guide the seat belts through side supports to protect them against damage. When folding the backrests, pull the seat belts along with them.
- Pull the release lever on one or both sides and fold down the backrests onto the seat cushion.

#### Electric seat folding

On vehicles with electric seat folding, the rear seats can also be folded from the load compartment.



- Pull switch on left or right sidewall of the load compartment to fold the corresponding part of the rear seat.

#### **⚠ Warning**

Take care when operating the electric foldable rear seats. The seat backrest is folded with considerable power. Risk of injury, particularly to children.

Ensure that nothing is attached to the rear seats or located on the seat cushion.



If the vehicle is to be loaded via a rear door, take the seat belt out of the seat backrest guide and put it behind the retainer (as shown in the illustration).

- To fold up, raise the backrests and guide them into an upright position until they engage audibly.

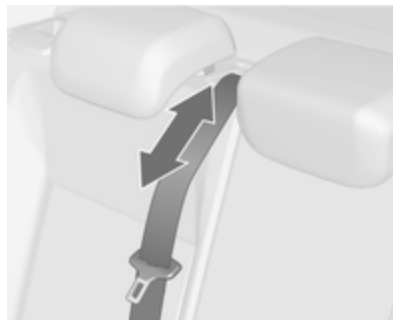
Ensure that the seat belts of the outboard seats are placed in the corresponding belt guides.



The backrests are properly engaged when the red marks on both sides near the release lever are no longer visible.

#### **⚠ Warning**

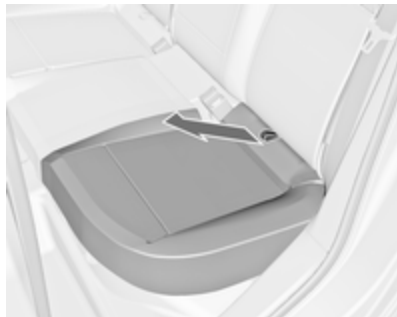
Only drive the vehicle if the backrests are securely locked into position. Otherwise there is a risk of personal injury or damage to the load or vehicle in the event of hard braking or a collision.



The seat belt of the centre seat could be blocked when the backrest is folded up too quickly. To unlock the retractor, push in the seat belt or pull it out by approx. 20 mm then release.

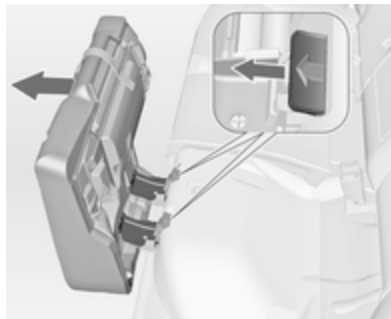


### Raise the seat cushion and fold the backrest

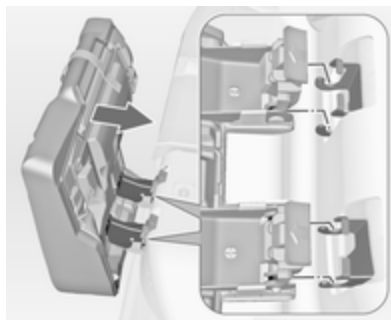


- Pull the strap on one or both seat cushions and lift the rear of the cushion forwards.
- Press and hold the catch to push the head restraints down ⇨ 37.
- Pull the release lever on one or both sides of the backrests and fold down onto the seat cushion to get a flat load bay.

### Remove the seat cushion



- Push both levers forward and remove seat cushion to extend the loading area.



- To attach, apply seat cushion as shown in the illustration and engage both levers.

### Open the pass-through in the rear centre backrest

- Fold down the rear armrest.



- Pull the grip and open the cover. Suitable for loading long, narrow objects. Ensure that the cover engages after folding up.



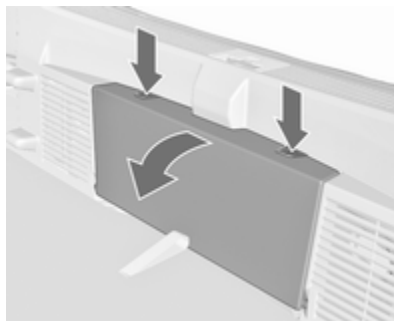
The closed cover can be secured from the side of the load compartment. Turn the knob 90°:

knob horizontal : cover secured from the side of the passenger compartment

knob vertical : cover not secured

## Rear storage

### 3-door hatchback



Press both buttons and fold down cover.

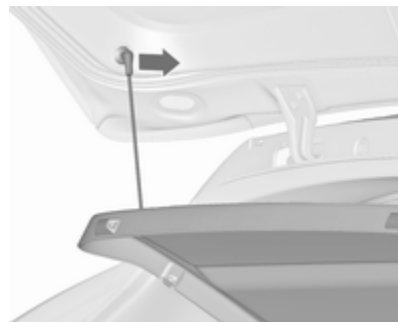
Maximum load: 0.5 kg.

## Load compartment cover

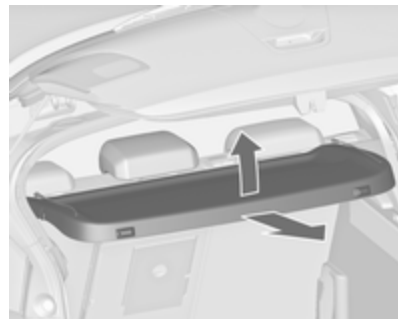
Do not place any objects on the cover.

## 3-door and 5-door hatchback

### Removing



Unhook retaining straps from tailgate.



Lift cover at the rear and push it upwards at the front.

Remove the cover.

If the height adjustable cover is mounted in the middle or upper position, the load compartment cover can be stowed below it.

Height adjustable cover ⇨ 86.

### Fitting

Engage cover in side guides and fold downwards. Attach retaining straps to tailgate.

### Sports tourer

#### Closing cover

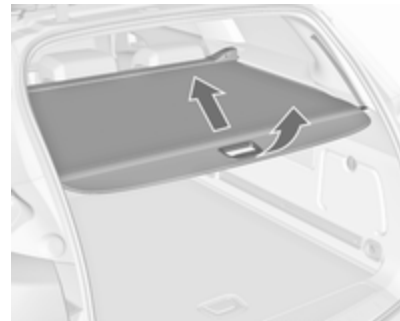
Pull the cover towards the rear using the handle until it engages in the sideward retainers.

#### Opening cover



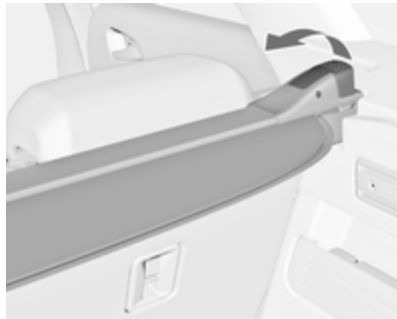
Pull the handle at the end of the cover to the rear and downwards. It rolls up automatically.

#### Cover in upper position

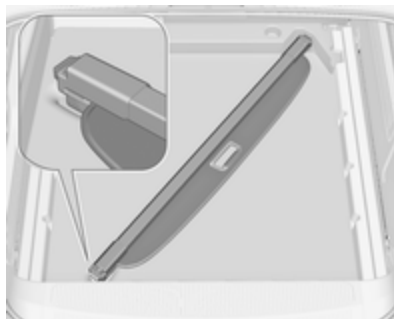


Push the handle at the end of the cover downwards. The rear of the cover is guided upwards automatically.

### Removing cover



Open the load compartment cover.  
Pull the release lever on the right side up and hold it. Lift the cover first on the right side and remove from retainers.



The removed cover can be stored under the rear floor cover like shown in the graphic.

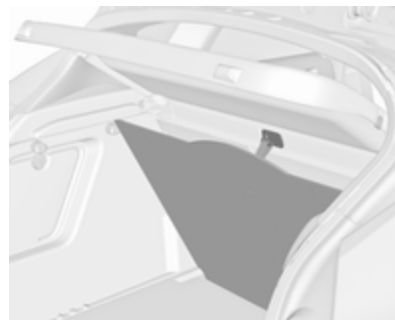
Rear floor storage cover ⇨ 86.

### Installing cover

Insert the left side of the load compartment cover in the recess, pull the release lever up and hold it, insert the right side of the load compartment cover and engage.

### Rear floor storage cover

Rear floor cover, 3-door hatchback, 5-door hatchback



The rear floor cover can be lifted. Hinge the loop into the hook on the lower side of the load compartment cover.

### Caution

Only use the hook for hanging up the rear floor cover and the height adjustable cover.

## Height adjustable cover, 3-door hatchback, 5-door hatchback



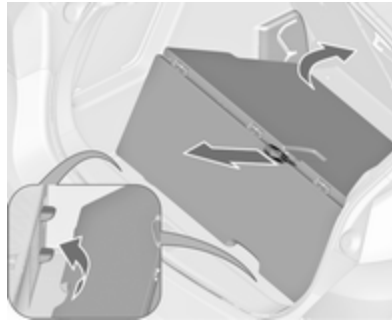
The height adjustable cover can be mounted in three positions:

- directly above the rear floor cover (1)
- in a middle position (2)
- in an upper position (3)

### Caution

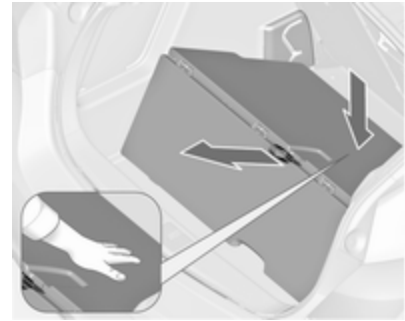
Ensure that the front and rear end of the height adjustable cover are attached to the same level.

## Lifting



To lift the cover to a higher level, pull the loop backwards and lift the rear edge of the cover onto the corresponding supports.

## Lowering



To lower the cover, pull the strap backwards and push down the front centre of the cover at the same time.

### Caution

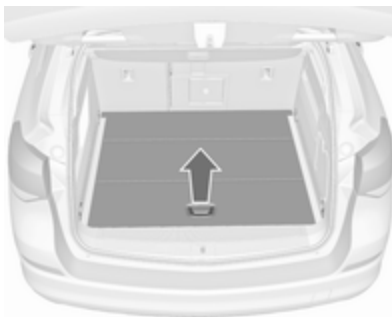
Do not lower the height adjustable cover to position 1 in vehicles equipped with subwoofer. The subwoofer could be damaged.

**Notice**

- If mounted in position **2** or **3**, the space between the rear floor cover and the height adjustable cover can be used as a stowage compartment.
- The height adjustable cover can be lifted and hooked in with the strap when it is mounted in position **1** or **2**.
- If mounted in position **2**, an almost completely flat load bay is created if the rear seat backrests are folded forwards.
- Opening the side covers (e.g. when exchanging the rear light bulbs) is only possible with the height adjustable cover mounted in position **1** or **2**.

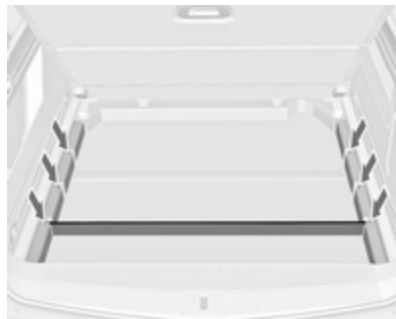
**Caution**

The height adjustable cover is able to withstand a load of no more than 100 kg.

**Rear floor cover, Sports tourer**

Lift the rear floor cover by pulling the handle. Fold and place the cover behind the rear seats.

The storage compartment below the rear floor cover can be divided by a bar.

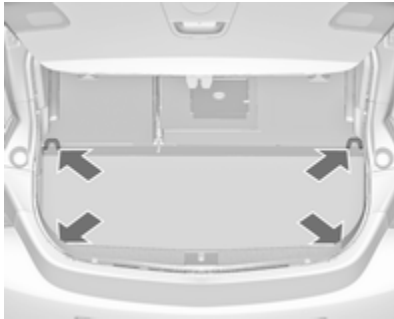


Insert the bar into the recesses at the sidewalls.

**Caution**

Insert the bar into the rearmost recess when transporting heavy objects in the load compartment. Otherwise the rear floor cover might be damaged.

## Lashing eyes



The lashing eyes are designed to secure items against slippage, e.g. using lashing straps or luggage net.

The lashing eyes are only accessible if the rear floor storage cover is in the lower position ↪ 86.

## Cargo management system

The FlexOrganizer is a flexible system for dividing up the load compartment.

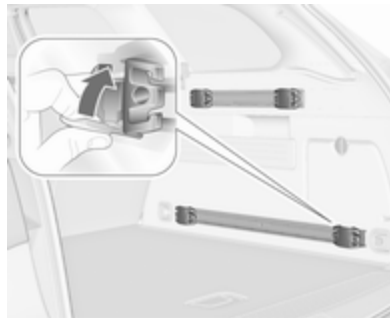
The system consists of:

- adapters
- mesh pockets

- hooks
- service box
- strap set

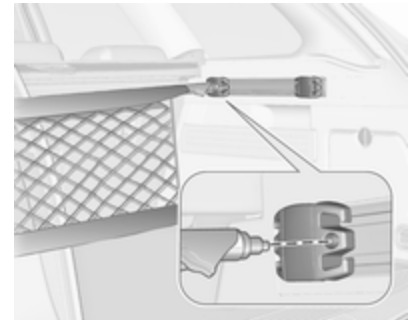
The components are fitted in rails on both side panels using adapters and hooks.

### Installation of adapters in the rails



Fold open the handle plate, insert the adapter into the upper and lower groove of the rail and move to the required position. Turn the handle plate upwards to lock the adapter. To remove, turn the handle plate down and move out of the rail.

## Variable partition net

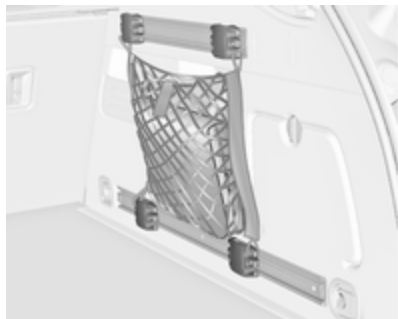


Insert adapters into the required position in the rails. Stick together the halves of the net rods.

To install, push rods together a little and insert into the relevant openings in the adapters.

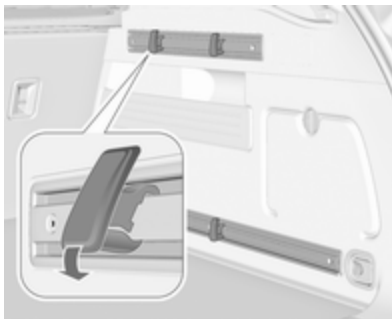
To remove, press the net rods together and remove from the adapters.

### Net pocket



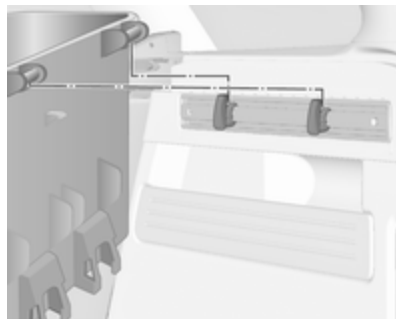
Insert adapters into the required position in the rails. The net pocket can be suspended from the adapters.

### Installation of hooks in the rails

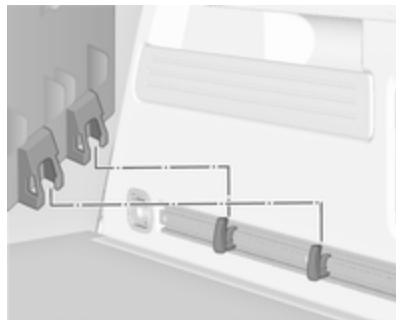


Insert the hook in the desired position first in the upper groove of the rail and then press in the lower groove. To remove, first pull out of the upper groove.

### Service box



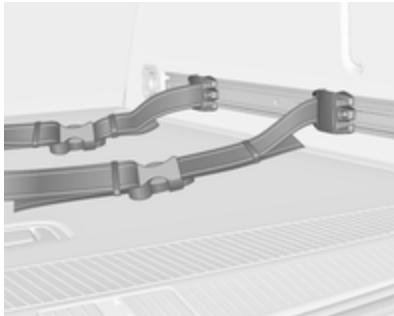
Install two hooks in the upper rail. Insert the upper brackets of the box from above into the hooks.





Alternatively install both hooks in the lower rail. Plug in the lower brackets of the box from above into the lower hooks.

### Strap set



Insert the adapters of the strap set in a rail. Make sure that the belt is not twisted.

The strap set has two locks to open. The belt can be tightened.

### Safety net

The safety net is available on the Sports tourer and can be installed behind the rear seats or, if the rear

seat backrests are folded and the seat cushions raised, behind the front seats.

Passengers must not be transported behind the safety net.

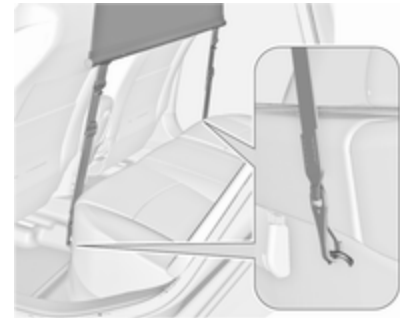
### Installation

#### Behind the rear seats



Attach lower hook with opening facing backward to eye in the right and left of the floor. Adjust strap length on safety net by attaching the upper hook to the eyes of the strap. Keep strap under tension while proceeding with installation of rod.

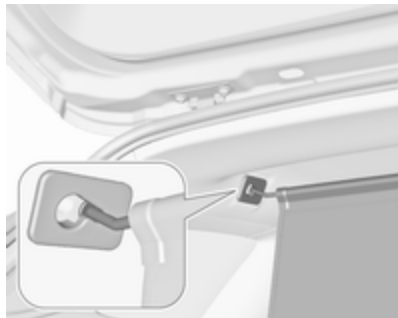
#### Behind the front seats



Attach strap to eyes underneath the rear seat cushion.

Fold backrests forward.

To get a flat load bay, first fold seat cushion before attaching the safety net. Move front seats forward to ease tension if necessary.

**Installation of the rod**

There are two installation openings in the roof frame: suspend and engage rod of net at one side, compress rod and suspend and engage at other side.

Load compartment ⇨ 80.

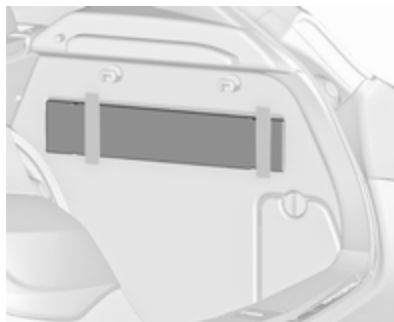
**Removal**

Unhook the safety net rods from the brackets in the roof frame. Detach straps from the eyes. Roll up the net and secure with a strap.

The removed safety net can be stored under the rear floor cover ⇨ 86.

**Warning triangle**

3-door hatchback, 5-door hatchback



Stow the warning triangle in the space behind the strap on the right side of the load compartment.

**Sports tourer**

Fold down straps. Stow the warning triangle in the space behind the straps on the inside of the tailgate.

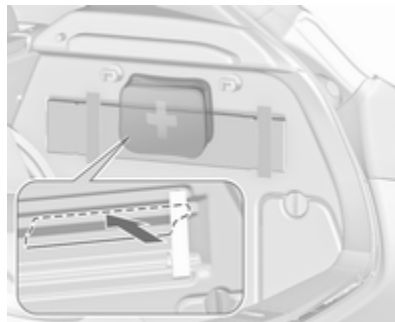
### 4-door saloon



Stow the warning triangle in the recess on the left side of the load compartment.

### First aid kit

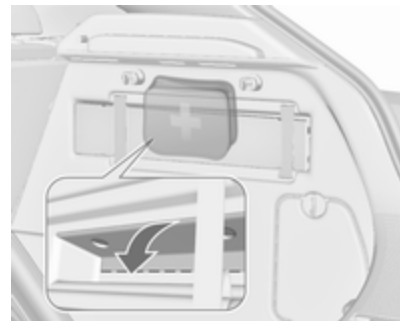
#### 5-door hatchback



Stow the first aid kit in the stowage compartment behind the warning triangle.

Before first use, press in the interior trim at the top and at the sides of the perforation. Then fold the trim outward to gain access to the stowage compartment.

#### 3-door hatchback



Stow the first aid kit in the stowage compartment behind the warning triangle.

Use the recesses to fold down the cover.

Depending on the equipment, the first aid kit can be stored in the rear storage ↗ 84.

**Sports tourer**

Fold down strap. Stow the first aid kit in the space behind a strap on the inside of the tailgate.

**4-door saloon**

Stow the first aid kit in the space behind the mesh net on the right side of the load compartment.

**Roof rack system****Roof rack**

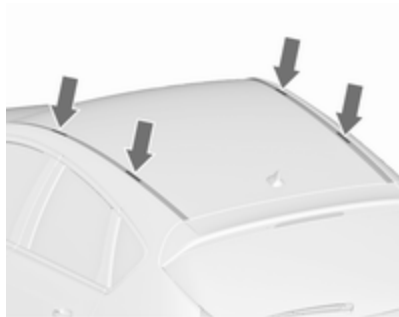
For safety reasons and to avoid damage to the roof, the vehicle approved roof rack system is recommended. For further information contact your workshop.

Follow the installation instructions and remove the roof rack when not in use.

**Mounting roof rack**

Detach the cover from each mounting point by using a coin.

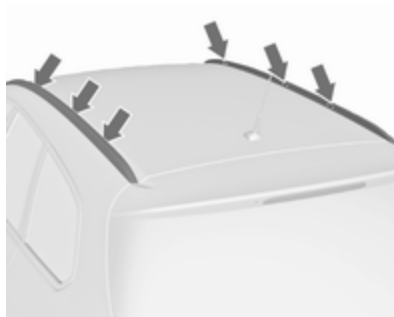
5-door hatchback, 4-door saloon



3-door hatchback



Sports tourer with roof railing



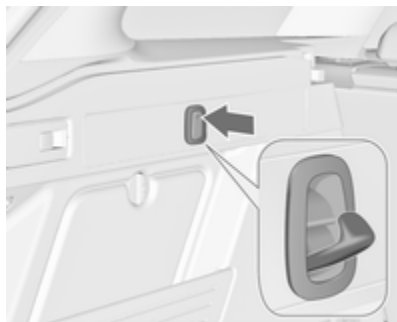
Fasten the roof rack in the area of the holes, indicated by the arrows in the illustration.

## Loading information



- Heavy objects in the load compartment should be placed against the seat backrests. Ensure that the backrests are securely engaged. If objects can be stacked, heavier objects should be placed at the bottom.
- Secure objects with lashing straps attached to the lashing eyes ↗ 89. Attach the height adjustable cover in the lowest position (1) ↗ 86.

- Use the four hooks on the sidewalls of the load compartment for hanging up carrier bags. Maximum load: 5 kg per hook.



- Sports tourer: Use the hooks on the sidewalls of the load compartment for hanging up carrier bags. Press to fold out the hook.
- Secure loose objects in the load compartment to prevent them from sliding.
- When transporting objects in the load compartment, the backrests of the rear seats must not be angled forward.

- Do not allow the load to protrude above the upper edge of the backrests.
- Do not place any objects on the load compartment cover or the instrument panel, and do not cover the sensor on top of the instrument panel.
- The load must not obstruct the operation of the pedals, parking brake and gear selector lever, or hinder the freedom of movement of the driver. Do not place any unsecured objects in the interior.
- Do not drive with an open load compartment.

### Warning

Always make sure that the load in the vehicle is securely stowed. Otherwise objects can be thrown around inside the vehicle and cause personal injury or damage to the load or car.

- The payload is the difference between the permitted gross vehicle weight (see identification

plate ↻ 288) and the EC kerb weight.

To calculate the payload, enter the data for your vehicle in the Weights table at the front of this manual.

The EC kerb weight includes weights for the driver (68 kg), luggage (7 kg) and all fluids (tank 90% full).

Optional equipment and accessories increase the kerb weight.

- Driving with a roof load increases the sensitivity of the vehicle to cross-winds and has a detrimental effect on vehicle handling due to the vehicle's higher centre of gravity. Distribute the load evenly and secure it properly with retaining straps. Adjust the tyre pressure and vehicle speed according to the load conditions. Check and retighten the straps frequently. Do not drive faster than 75 mph. The permissible roof load is 75 kg for the 3-door / 5-door

---

hatchback and 4-door saloon, for the Sports tourer it is 100 kg. The roof load is the combined weight of the roof rack and the load.

# Instruments and controls

<b>Controls</b> .....	<b>99</b>
Steering wheel adjustment .....	99
Steering wheel controls .....	99
Heated steering wheel .....	99
Horn .....	100
Windscreen wiper/washer .....	100
Rear window wiper/washer .....	102
Outside temperature .....	102
Clock .....	103
Power outlets .....	104
Cigarette lighter .....	105
Ashtrays .....	105
<b>Warning lights, gauges and indicators</b> .....	<b>106</b>
Instrument cluster .....	106
Speedometer .....	106
Odometer .....	106
Trip odometer .....	106
Tachometer .....	106
Fuel gauge .....	107
Fuel selector .....	107
Engine coolant temperature gauge .....	107
Service display .....	108

Control indicators .....	109
Turn signal .....	112
Seat belt reminder .....	112
Airbag and belt tensioners .....	112
Airbag deactivation .....	112
Charging system .....	113
Malfunction indicator light .....	113
Service vehicle soon .....	113
Brake and clutch system .....	113
Operate pedal .....	113
Electric parking brake .....	113
Electric parking brake fault .....	114
Antilock brake system (ABS) .....	114
Upshift .....	114
Power steering .....	114
Lane departure warning .....	114
Ultrasonic parking assist .....	115
Electronic Stability Control off .....	115
Electronic Stability Control and Traction Control system .....	115
Traction Control system off .....	115
Preheating .....	115
Diesel particle filter .....	115
Tyre pressure monitoring system .....	116
Engine oil pressure .....	116
Low fuel .....	116
Immobiliser .....	117
Reduced engine power .....	117
Exterior light .....	117

High beam .....	117
High beam assist .....	117
Adaptive forward lighting .....	117
Fog light .....	117
Rear fog light .....	117
Low washer fluid .....	117
Cruise control .....	117
Adaptive cruise control .....	117
Vehicle detected ahead .....	118
Door open .....	118
<b>Information displays</b> .....	<b>118</b>
Driver Information Centre .....	118
Graphic-Info-Display, Colour-Info-Display .....	122
Smartphone controller .....	124
<b>Vehicle messages</b> .....	<b>124</b>
Warning chimes .....	127
Battery voltage .....	127
<b>Trip computer</b> .....	<b>128</b>
<b>Vehicle personalisation</b> .....	<b>130</b>
<b>OnStar® system</b> .....	<b>135</b>



## Controls

### Steering wheel adjustment



Unlock lever, adjust steering wheel, then engage lever and ensure it is fully locked.

Do not adjust steering wheel unless vehicle is stationary and steering wheel lock has been released.

### Steering wheel controls



The Infotainment system, the cruise control and a connected mobile phone can be operated via the controls on the steering wheel.

Further information is available in the Infotainment system manual.

Driver assistance systems ⇨ 183.

### Heated steering wheel



Activate heating by pressing ☀. Activation is indicated by the LED in the button.



The recommended grip areas of the steering wheel are heated quicker and to a higher temperature than the other areas.

Heating is operational when the engine is running and during an Autostop.

Stop-start system ⇨ 166.

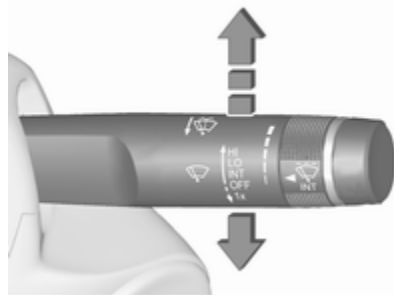
## Horn



Press .

## Windscreen wiper/washer

### Windscreen wiper



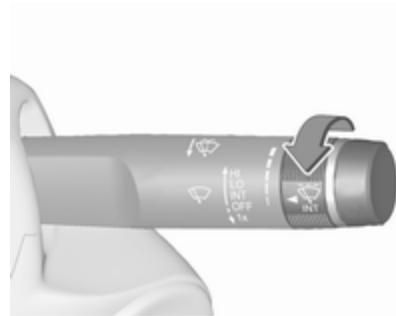
- HI** : fast
- LO** : slow
- INT** : interval wiping or automatic wiping with rain sensor
- OFF** : off

For a single wipe when the windscreen wiper is off, press the lever down to position **1x**.

Do not use if the windscreen is frozen.

Switch off in car washes.

### Adjustable wiper interval

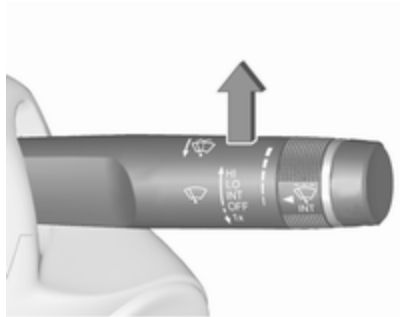


Wiper lever in position **INT**.

Turn the adjuster wheel to adjust the desired wipe interval:

- short interval : turn adjuster wheel upwards
- long interval : turn adjuster wheel downwards

### Automatic wiping with rain sensor

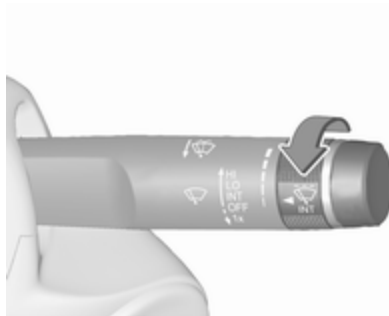


**INT** : automatic wiping with rain sensor

The rain sensor detects the amount of water on the windscreen and automatically regulates the frequency of the windscreen wiper.

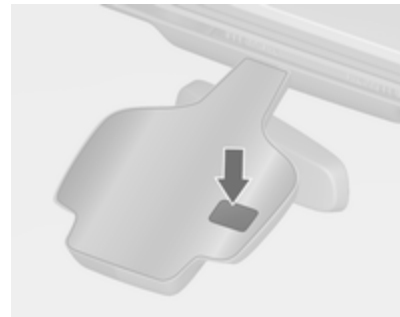
If the wiper frequency is above 20 seconds, the wiper arm moves slightly down to the park position.

### Adjustable sensitivity of the rain sensor



Turn the adjuster wheel to adjust the sensitivity:

- low sensitivity : turn adjuster wheel downwards
- high sensitivity : turn adjuster wheel upwards



Keep the sensor free from dust, dirt and ice.

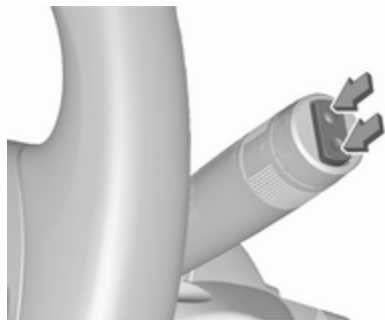
### Windscreen and headlight washer



Pull lever. Washer fluid is sprayed onto the windscreen and the wiper wipes a few times.

If the headlights are on, washer fluid is also sprayed onto the headlights, provided that the lever is pulled sufficiently long. Afterwards, the headlight washer system is inoperable for 5 wash cycles or until engine or headlights have been switched off and on again.

### Rear window wiper/washer



Press the rocker switch to activate the rear window wiper:

- upper position : continuous operation
- lower position : intermittent operation
- middle position : off



Push lever. Washer fluid is sprayed onto the rear window and the wiper wipes a few times.

Do not use if the rear window is frozen.

Switch off in car washes.

The rear window wiper comes on automatically when the windscreen wiper is switched on and reverse gear is engaged.

Activation or deactivation of this function can be changed in the Settings menu in the Info-Display.

Vehicle personalisation ⇨ 130.

The rear window washer system is deactivated when the fluid level is too low.

### Outside temperature



A drop in temperature is indicated immediately and a rise in temperature after a time delay.



If outside temperature drops to 3 °C, a warning message is displayed in the Driver Information Centre with Uplevel-Combi-Display.

### ⚠ Warning

The road surface may already be icy even though the display indicates a few degrees above 0 °C.

## Clock

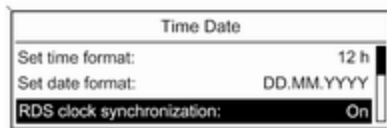
Date and time are shown in the Info-Display.

### Time and date settings

CD 400plus/CD 400/CD 300

Press **CONFIG**. The menu **Settings** is displayed.

Select **Time Date**.



- **Set time format:** Changes indication of hours between **12 h** and **24 h**.
- **Set date format:** Changes indication of date between **MM/DD/YYYY** and **DD.MM.YYYY**.
- **Display clock:** Switches on/off indication of time on the display.
- **RDS clock synchronization:** The RDS signal of most VHF transmitters automatically sets the time. RDS time synchronisation can take a few minutes. Some transmitters do not send a correct time signal. In such cases, it is recommended to switch off automatic time synchronisation.

Vehicle personalisation ↻ 130.

### Time and date settings

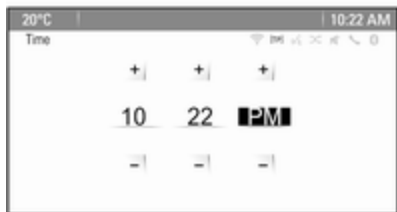
Navi 950/Navi 650/CD 600

Press **CONFIG** and then select the **Time and Date** menu item to display the respective submenu.

Selectable setting options:

- **Set time:** Changes the time shown on the display.
- **Set date:** Changes the date shown on the display.

20136



#### Notice

If **RDS Auto Time Adjust** is activated, time and date are automatically set by the system.

See Infotainment system manual for further information.

#### Set time

To adjust the time settings, select the **Set Time** menu item. Turn the multifunction knob to adjust the first setting.

Press the multifunction knob to confirm the input. The coloured background moves to the next setting.

Adjust all settings.

#### Set date

To adjust the time settings, select the **Set Date** menu item. Turn the multifunction knob to adjust the first setting.

Press the multifunction knob to confirm the input. The coloured background moves to the next setting.

Adjust all settings.

#### Time format

To choose the desired time format, select **12 hr / 24 hr Format**. Activate **12 Hour** or **24 Hour**.

Vehicle personalisation ⇨ 130.

#### Power outlets



A 12 Volt power outlet is located in the front console.



A further 12 Volt power outlet is located in the rear console. Fold the cover downwards.

Sports tourer: A 12 Volt power outlet is located at the left sidewall in the load compartment.

Do not exceed the maximum power consumption of 120 watts.

With ignition off, the power outlets are deactivated. Additionally the power outlets are deactivated in the event of low vehicle battery voltage.

Electric accessories that are connected must comply with the electromagnetic compatibility requirements laid down in DIN VDE 40 839.

Do not connect any current-delivering accessories, e.g. electric charging devices or batteries.

Do not damage the outlet by using unsuitable plugs.

Stop-start system ⇨ 166.

## Cigarette lighter

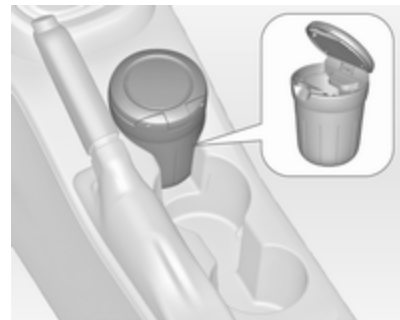


The cigarette lighter is located in the front console.

Press in cigarette lighter. It switches off automatically once the element is glowing. Pull out lighter.

## Ashtrays

Caution
To be used only for ash and not for combustible rubbish.



The portable ashtray can be placed in the cupholders.

## Warning lights, gauges and indicators

### Instrument cluster

In some versions, the needles of the instruments briefly rotate to the end position when the ignition is switched on.

### Speedometer



Indicates vehicle speed.

### Odometer



The bottom line displays the recorded distance in miles.

### Trip odometer

The top line displays the recorded distance since the last reset.

To reset, press **SET/CLR** on the turn signal lever for a few seconds  
↕ 118.

Some versions are equipped with a reset knob between speedometer and Driver Information Centre: to reset press and hold the knob for a few seconds with the ignition on.

Trip odometer counts up to a distance of 2000 miles and then restarts at 0.

### Tachometer



Displays the engine speed.

Drive in a low engine speed range for each gear as much as possible.

#### Caution


If the needle is in the red warning zone, the maximum permitted engine speed is exceeded. Engine at risk.



## Fuel gauge



Displays the fuel level or gas level in the tank depending on the operation mode.

Control indicator  illuminates if the level in the tank is low. Refuel immediately if it flashes.


During liquid gas operation, the system automatically switches over to petrol operation when gas tanks are empty  $\rightarrow$  107.



Never run the tank dry.



Because of the fuel remaining in the tank, the top-up quantity may be less than the specified tank capacity.

## Fuel selector



Press **LPG** to switch between petrol and liquid gas operation. The LED  status shows the current operating mode.

-  off : petrol operation
-  flashes : checking conditions for fuel transition to liquid gas operation. Illuminates if conditions are fulfilled.

-  illuminates : liquid gas operation
-  flashes 5 times and extinguishes : liquid gas tank is empty or failure in liquid gas system. A message is displayed in the DIC.

As soon as the liquid gas tank is empty, petrol operation is automatically engaged until the ignition is switched off.

Fuel for liquid gas operation  $\rightarrow$  214.

## Engine coolant temperature gauge



Displays the coolant temperature.

left area : engine operating temperature not yet reached

central area : normal operating temperature

right area : temperature too high

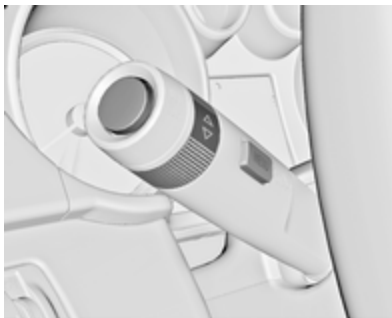
### Caution


If engine coolant temperature is too high, stop vehicle, switch off engine. Danger to engine. Check coolant level.

## Service display

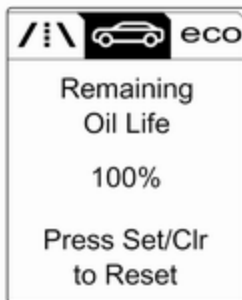
The engine oil life system lets you know when to change the engine oil and filter. Based on driving conditions, the interval at which an engine oil and filter change will be indicated can vary considerably.

To display the remaining engine oil life duration use turn signal lever buttons:



Press **MENU** to select the **Vehicle Information Menu** .

Turn the adjuster wheel to select **Remaining Oil Life**.



The remaining engine oil life duration is displayed in percent in the Driver Information Centre.

### Reset

Press **SET/CLR** on turn signal lever for several seconds to reset. The remaining engine oil life duration page must be active. Switch on ignition, but not the engine.

The system must be reset every time the engine oil is changed, to ensure proper functionality. Seek the assistance of a workshop.

### Next service

When the system has calculated that engine oil life has diminished, a warning message appears in the Driver Information Centre. Have engine oil and filter changed by a workshop within one week or 300 miles (whichever occurs first).

Driver Information Centre ⇨ 118.

Service information ⇨ 285.

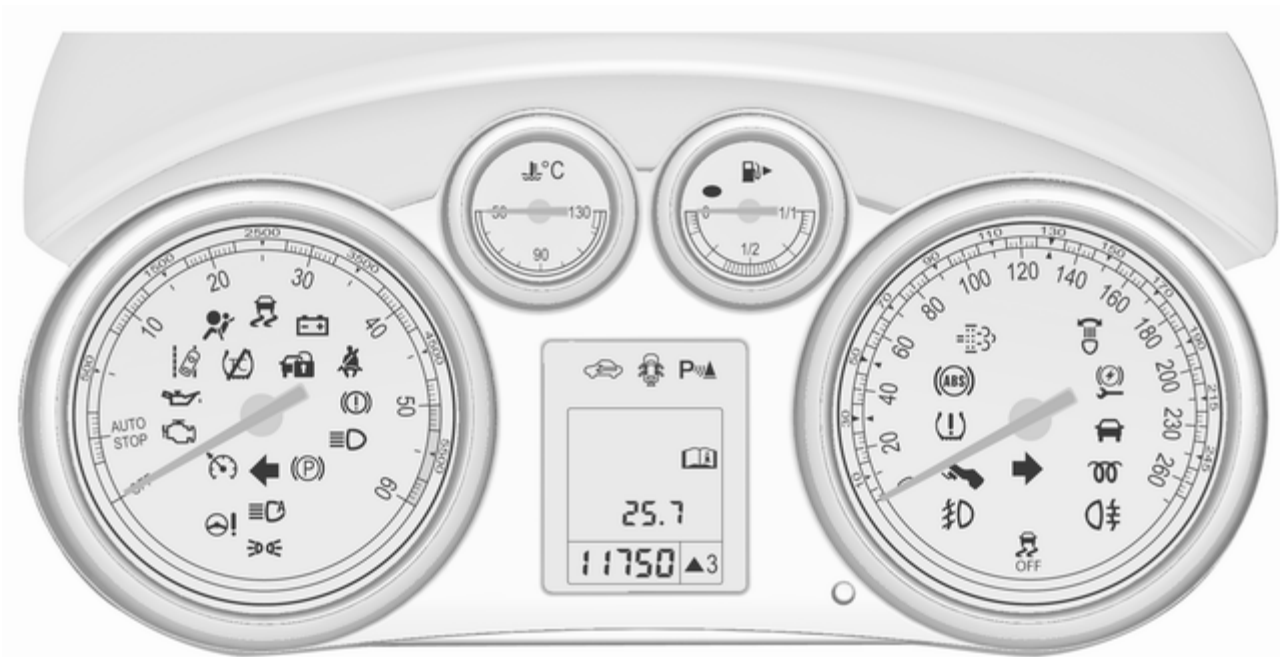
## Control indicators

The control indicators described are not present in all vehicles. The description applies to all instrument versions. Depending on the equipment, the position of the control indicators may vary. When the ignition is switched on, most control indicators will illuminate briefly as a functionality test.

The control indicator colours mean:

- red : danger, important reminder
- yellow : warning, information, fault
- green : confirmation of activation
- blue : confirmation of activation
- white : confirmation of activation







Control indicators in the instrument cluster

































## Control indicators in the centre console



### Overview

-  Turn signal ⇨ 112
-  Seat belt reminder ⇨ 112
-  Airbag and belt tensioners ⇨ 112
-  Airbag deactivation ⇨ 112
-  Charging system ⇨ 113
-  Malfunction indicator light ⇨ 113

-  Service vehicle soon ⇨ 113
-  Brake and clutch system ⇨ 113
-  Operate pedal ⇨ 113
-  Electric parking brake ⇨ 113
-  Electric parking brake fault ⇨ 114
-  Antilock brake system (ABS) ⇨ 114
-  Upshift ⇨ 114
-  Power steering ⇨ 114
-  Lane departure warning ⇨ 114
-  Ultrasonic parking assist ⇨ 115
-  Electronic Stability Control off ⇨ 115
-  Electronic Stability Control and Traction Control system ⇨ 115
-  Traction Control system off ⇨ 115
-  Preheating ⇨ 115

-  Diesel particle filter ⇨ 115
-  Tyre pressure monitoring system ⇨ 116
-  Engine oil pressure ⇨ 116
-  Low fuel ⇨ 116
-  Immobiliser ⇨ 117
-  Reduced engine power ⇨ 117
-  Exterior light ⇨ 117
-  High beam ⇨ 117
-  High beam assist ⇨ 117
-  Adaptive forward lighting ⇨ 117
-  Fog light ⇨ 117
-  Rear fog light ⇨ 117
-  Low washer fluid ⇨ 117
-  Cruise control ⇨ 117 / Adaptive cruise control ⇨ 117
-  Vehicle detected ahead ⇨ 118
-  Door open ⇨ 118

## Turn signal

↔ illuminates or flashes green.

## Illuminates briefly

The parking lights are switched on.

## Flashes

A turn signal or the hazard warning flashers are activated.


Rapid flashing: failure of a turn signal light or associated fuse, failure of turn signal light on trailer.


Bulb replacement ↔ 234, Fuses ↔ 252.

Turn signals ↔ 147.

## Seat belt reminder

### Seat belt reminder on front seats

 for driver's seat illuminates or flashes red.

 for front passenger seat illuminates or flashes red, when the seat is occupied.

## Illuminates

After the ignition has been switched on until the seat belt has been fastened.


## Flashes

After having started the engine for a maximum of 100 seconds until the seat belt has been fastened.

## Airbag and belt tensioners

 illuminates red.

When the ignition is switched on, the control indicator illuminates for approx. 4 seconds. If it does not illuminate, does not go out after 4 seconds or illuminates whilst driving, there is a fault in the airbag system. Seek the assistance of a workshop. The airbags and belt pretensioners may fail to trigger in the event of an accident.

Deployment of the belt pretensioners or airbags is indicated by continuous illumination of .

## Warning

Have the cause of the fault remedied immediately by a workshop.

Belt pretensioners, airbag system  
↔ 46, ↔ 49.

## Airbag deactivation

 illuminates yellow.

Illuminates for approx. 60 seconds after the ignition is switched on. The front passenger airbag is activated.

 illuminates yellow.

The front passenger airbag is deactivated ↔ 51.

## Danger

Risk of fatal injury for a child using a child restraint system together with activated front passenger airbag.

Risk of fatal injury for an adult person with deactivated front passenger airbag.

## Charging system


 illuminates red.

Illuminates when the ignition is switched on and extinguishes shortly after the engine starts.

## Illuminates when the engine is running

Stop, switch off engine. Vehicle battery is not charging. Engine cooling may be interrupted. The brake servo unit may cease to be effective. Seek the assistance of a workshop.

## Malfunction indicator light

 illuminates or flashes yellow.

Illuminates when the ignition is switched on and extinguishes shortly after the engine starts.

## Illuminates when the engine is running

Fault in the emission control system. The permitted emission limits may be exceeded. Seek the assistance of a workshop immediately.

## Flashes when the engine is running

Fault that could lead to catalytic converter damage. Ease up on the accelerator until the flashing stops. Seek the assistance of a workshop immediately.

## Service vehicle soon

 illuminates yellow.

Additionally a warning message or a warning code is displayed.

The vehicle needs a service.

Seek the assistance of a workshop.

Vehicle messages ⇨ 124.

## Brake and clutch system

 illuminates red.


The brake and clutch fluid level is too low ⇨ 231.

### Warning

Stop. Do not continue your journey. Consult a workshop.

Illuminates after the ignition is switched on if the manual parking brake is applied ⇨ 176.

## Operate pedal

 illuminates or flashes yellow.

## Illuminates

Brake pedal needs to be depressed to release the electric parking brake ⇨ 176.

Clutch pedal needs to be depressed to start the engine in Autostop mode. Stop-start system ⇨ 166.

## Flashes

Clutch pedal needs to be depressed for a main start of the engine ⇨ 18, ⇨ 165.

On some versions the operate pedal message is indicated in the Driver Information Centre (DIC) ⇨ 124.

## Electric parking brake

 illuminates or flashes red.

**Illuminates**

Electric parking brake is applied  
↷ 176.

**Flashes**

Electric parking brake is not fully applied or released. Switch on ignition, depress brake pedal and attempt to reset the system by first releasing and then applying the electric parking brake. If (P) remains flashing, do not drive and seek the assistance of a workshop.

**Electric parking brake fault**

(P) illuminates or flashes yellow.

**Illuminates**

Electric parking brake is operating with reduced performance ↷ 176.

**Flashes**

Electric parking brake is in service mode. Stop vehicle, apply and release the electric parking brake to reset.

**⚠ Warning**

Have the cause of the fault remedied immediately by a workshop.

**Antilock brake system (ABS)**

(ABS) illuminates yellow.

Illuminates for a few seconds after the ignition is switched on. The system is ready for operation when the control indicator extinguishes.

If the control indicator does not go out after a few seconds, or if it illuminates while driving, there is a fault in the ABS. The brake system remains operational but without ABS regulation.

Antilock brake system ↷ 175.

**Upshift**

▲ illuminates green as a control indicator, or is shown as a symbol ▲ with the number of the next higher gear in the Driver Information Centre

(DIC), when upshifting is recommended for fuel saving reasons.

On some versions, gearshift indication is popped-up as full page in the DIC.

EcoFlex drive assistant ↷ 128.

**Power steering**

(P) illuminates yellow.

**Illuminates with power steering reduced**

Power steering is reduced due to overheating of the system. Control indicator extinguishes when the system has cooled down.

Stop-start system ↷ 166.

**Illuminates with power steering disabled**

Failure in the power steering system. Consult a workshop.

**Lane departure warning**

(LD) illuminates green or flashes yellow.



**Illuminates green**

System is switched on and ready to operate.

**Flashes yellow**

System recognises an unintended lane change.

**Ultrasonic parking assist**

 illuminates yellow.

Fault in system

or

Fault due to sensors that are dirty or covered by ice or snow

or

Interference due to external sources of ultrasound. Once the source of interference is removed, the system will operate normally.

Have the cause of the fault in the system remedied by a workshop.


Ultrasonic parking assist ⇨ 198.

**Electronic Stability Control off**

 illuminates yellow.

The system is deactivated.

**Electronic Stability Control and Traction Control system**

 illuminates or flashes yellow.

**Illuminates**

A fault in the system is present. Continued driving is possible. Driving stability, however, may deteriorate depending on road surface conditions.


Have the cause of the fault remedied by a workshop.

**Flashes**

The system is actively engaged. Engine output may be reduced and the vehicle may be braked automatically to a small degree.

Electronic Stability Control (ESC)  
⇨ 179, Traction Control system (TC)  
⇨ 178.

**Traction Control system off**

 illuminates yellow.


The system is deactivated.

**Preheating**


 illuminates yellow.

Preheating is activated. Only activates when outside temperature is low.

**Diesel particle filter**

 illuminates or flashes yellow.

The diesel particle filter requires cleaning.

Continue driving until  extinguishes. If possible, do not allow engine speed to drop below 2000 rpm.

**Illuminates**

The diesel particle filter is full. Start cleaning process as soon as possible.

**Flashes**

The maximum filling level of the filter is reached. Start cleaning process immediately to avoid damage to the engine.

Diesel particle filter ⇨ 169, Stop-start system ⇨ 166.

**Tyre pressure monitoring system**

(L) illuminates or flashes yellow.

**Illuminates**

Tyre pressure loss. Stop immediately and check tyre pressure.

**Flashes**

Fault in system or tyre without pressure sensor mounted (e.g. spare wheel). After 60-90 seconds the control indicator illuminates continuously. Consult a workshop.

**Engine oil pressure**

(O) illuminates red.

Illuminates when the ignition is switched on and extinguishes shortly after the engine starts.

**Illuminates when the engine is running****Caution**

Engine lubrication may be interrupted. This may result in damage to the engine and/or locking of the drive wheels.

1. Depress clutch.
2. Select neutral gear, set selector lever to **N**.
3. Move out of the flow of traffic as quickly as possible without impeding other vehicles.
4. Switch off ignition.

**⚠ Warning**

When the engine is off, considerably more force is needed to brake and steer. During an Autostop the brake servo unit will still be operational.

Do not remove key until vehicle is stationary, otherwise the steering wheel lock could engage unexpectedly.

Check oil level before seeking the assistance of a workshop ⇨ 228.

**Low fuel**

(F) illuminates or flashes yellow.

**Illuminates**

Level in fuel tank is too low.

**Flashes**

Fuel used up. Refuel immediately. Never run the tank dry.

Catalytic converter ⇨ 170.

Bleeding the diesel fuel system ⇨ 233.

## Immobiliser

 flashes yellow.

Fault in the immobiliser system. The engine cannot be started.

## Reduced engine power

 illuminates yellow.

The engine power is limited. Consult a workshop.



## Exterior light

 illuminates green.

The exterior lights are on  140.



## High beam

 illuminates blue.


Illuminates when high beam is on or during headlight flash  142, or when high beam is on with high beam assist or intelligent light range  144.

## High beam assist

 illuminates green.

The high beam assist or intelligent light range is activated  142,  144.

## Adaptive forward lighting

 illuminates or flashes yellow.



### Illuminates


Fault in system.

Seek the assistance of a workshop.

### Flashes

System switched to symmetrical low beam.

Control indicator  flashes for approx. 4 seconds after the ignition is switched on as a reminder that the system has been activated  143.


Automatic light control  141.

## Fog light

 illuminates green.

The front fog lights are on  148.

## Rear fog light

 illuminates yellow.

The rear fog light is on  148.

## Low washer fluid

 illuminates yellow.

The washer fluid level is low.

Washer fluid  230.

## Cruise control

 illuminates white or green.

### Illuminates white

The system is on.

### Illuminates green

Cruise control is active.

Cruise control  183.

## Adaptive cruise control

 illuminates white or green.

### Illuminates white

The system is on.

### Illuminates green

Adaptive cruise control is active.  
Adaptive cruise control ↻ 186.

### Vehicle detected ahead

🚗 illuminates green.

A vehicle ahead is detected in the same lane.

Adaptive cruise control ↻ 186,  
Forward collision alert ↻ 193.

### Door open

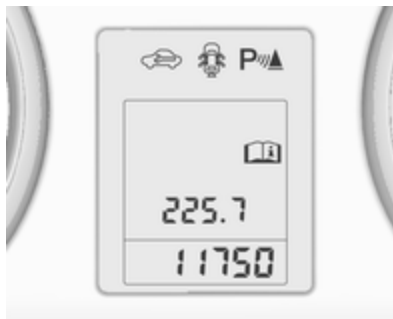
🚪 illuminates red.

A door or the tailgate is open.

## Information displays

### Driver Information Centre

The Driver Information Centre (DIC) is located in the instrument cluster between speedometer and tachometer. It is available as Midlevel-Display or Uplevel-Combi-Display.



Midlevel-Display indicates:

- overall odometer
- trip odometer
- some control indicators
- vehicle information

- trip/fuel information
- vehicle messages, displayed as code numbers ↻ 124.



In the Uplevel-Combi-Display, menu pages can be selected by pressing **MENU**. Menu symbols are indicated in the top line of the display:

- 🚗 Vehicle Information Menu
- /:\ Trip/Fuel Information Menu
- ECO ECO Information Menu
- ⚡ Performance Menu

Some of the displayed functions differ when the vehicle is being driven or at a standstill. Some functions are only available when the vehicle is being driven.

Vehicle personalisation ⇨ 130.

Memorised settings ⇨ 22.

### Selecting menus and functions

The menus and functions can be selected via the buttons on the turn signal lever.



Press **MENU** to switch between the menus or to return from a submenu to the next higher menu level.




Turn the adjuster wheel to highlight a menu option or to set a numeric value.



Press **SET/CLR** to select a function or confirm a message.

### Vehicle Information Menu

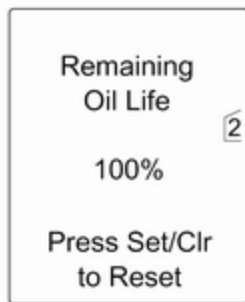
Press **MENU** to select the **Vehicle Information Menu** or, on Uplevel-Combi-Display, select .

Turn the adjuster wheel to select a submenu. Press **SET/CLR** to confirm.

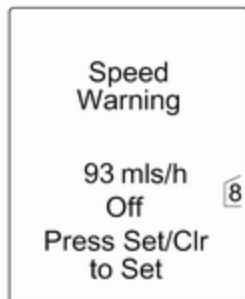
Follow the instructions given in the submenus.

Possible submenus can include, depending on the version:

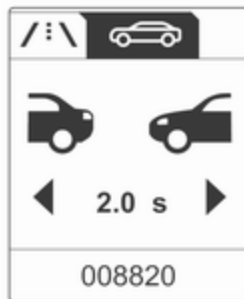
- **Unit:** Displayed units can be changed.
- **Tyre Pressure:** Checks tyre pressure of all wheels during driving ⇨ 262.
- **Tyre Load:** Select tyre pressure category according to the current actual tyre inflation pressure ⇨ 262.



- **Remaining Oil Life:** Indicates when to change the engine oil and filter ↷ 108.



- **Speed Warning:** If exceeding the preset speed, a warning chime will be activated.
- **Traffic Sign Assistant:** Displays detected traffic signs for the current route section. ↷ 209



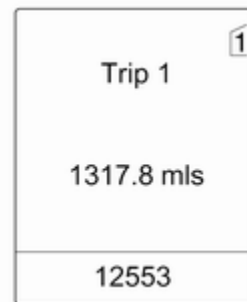
- **Following Dist.:** Displays the distance to a moving vehicle ahead ↷ 196.

Selection and indication can be different between Midlevel-Display and Uplevel-Combi-Display.

### Trip/Fuel Information Menu

Press **MENU** to select the **Trip/Fuel Information Menu**, or select / : \ on Uplevel-Combi-Display.

Turn the adjuster wheel to select a submenu. Press **SET/CLR** to confirm.



- trip odometer 1
- trip odometer 2
- digital speed

Trip odometer 2 and digital speed are only available on vehicles with Uplevel-Combi-Display.

Reset trip odometer by pressing **SET/CLR** on the turn signal lever for a few seconds or by pressing the reset knob between speedometer and DIC with the ignition on.

On vehicles with trip computer, more submenus are available.

Selection and indication can be different between Midlevel-Display and Uplevel-Combi-Display.

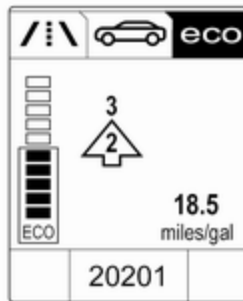
Trip/Fuel Information Menu, Trip Computer ↷ 128.

### ECO Information Menu

Press **MENU** to select **ECO** in the top line of the Uplevel-Combi-Display.

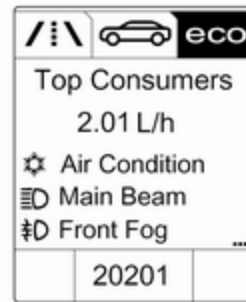
Turn the adjuster wheel to select a submenu. Press **SET/CLR** to confirm.

Submenus are:



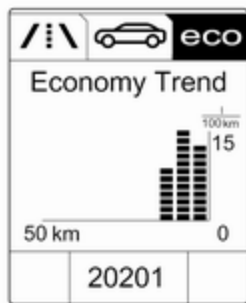
- **Shift indication:** Current gear is indicated inside an arrow. The figure above recommends upshifting for fuel saving reasons.

**Eco index display:** The current fuel consumption is indicated on a segment display. For economical driving, adapt your driving characteristic to keep the filled segments within the Eco area. The more segments are filled, the higher the fuel consumption. Simultaneously the current consumption value is indicated.



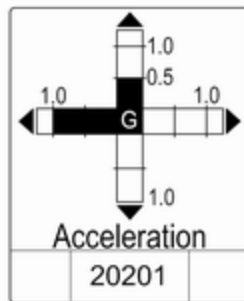
- **Top Consumers:** List of top comfort consumers currently switched on is displayed in descending order. Fuel saving potential is indicated. A switched off consumer disappears from the list and the consumption value will be updated.

During sporadic driving conditions, the engine will activate the heated rear window automatically to increase the engine load. In this event, the heated rear window is indicated as one of the top consumers, without activation by the driver.



- **Economy Trend:** Displays the average consumption development over a distance of 50 miles. Filled segments display the consumption in 5 mile steps and shows the effect of topography or driving behaviour on fuel consumption.

### Performance Menu



Press **MENU** to select the **Performance Menu**, or select  on Uplevel-Combi-Display.

Turn the adjuster wheel to select a submenu. Press **SET/CLR** to confirm.

Submenus are:

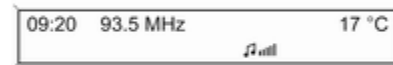
- **Acceleration:** Display of current acceleration in all directions.
- **Lap Timer:** Display of lap times, top speed, average speed and average time. Follow the instructions given in the submenu.

- **Coolant Temp.:** Display of coolant temperature.
- **Battery Volt.:** Display of vehicle battery voltage.

### Graphic-Info-Display, Colour-Info-Display

Depending on the vehicle configuration the vehicle has a Graphic-Info-Display or Colour-Info-Display. The Info-Display is located in the instrument panel above the Infotainment system.

### Graphic-Info-Display





Depending on the Infotainment system, the Graphic-Info-Display is available in two versions.



20153

Graphic-Info-Display indicates:

- time ↻ 103
- outside temperature ↻ 102
- date ↻ 103
- Infotainment system, see description in the Infotainment system manual
- settings for vehicle personalisation ↻ 130

## Colour-Info-Display



The Colour-Info-Display indicates in colour:

- time ↻ 103
- outside temperature ↻ 102
- date ↻ 103
- Infotainment system, see description in the Infotainment system manual
- navigation, see description in the Infotainment system manual
- system settings

- vehicle messages ↻ 124
- settings for vehicle personalisation ↻ 130

The type of information and how it is displayed depends on the equipment of the vehicle and the settings made.

## Selecting menus and settings

Menus and settings are accessed via the display.



Selections are made via:

- menus
- function buttons and multifunction knob of the Infotainment system

### Selecting with the Infotainment system



Select a function via the Infotainment system buttons. The menu of the selected function is displayed.

The multifunction knob is used to select an item and to confirm.

#### Multifunction knob

The multifunction knob is the central control element for the menus:

#### Turn

- to highlight a menu option
- to set a numeric value or to display a menu option

#### Press (the outer ring)

- to select or activate the highlighted option
- to confirm a set value
- to switch a system function on/off

#### BACK

Press **BACK** to:

- exit a menu without changing settings
- return from a submenu to a higher menu level
- delete the last character in a character sequence

Press and hold the **BACK** for a few seconds to delete the entire entry.

Vehicle personalisation ↻ 130.

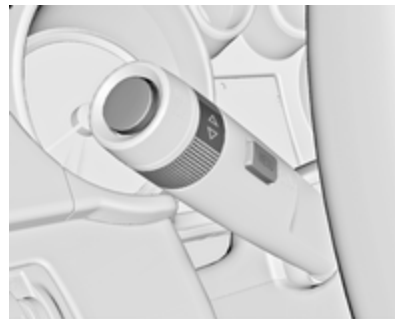
Memorised settings ↻ 22.

### Smartphone controller

The smartphone controller allows a smartphone to access vehicle data via WLAN or Bluetooth connection. This data can then be displayed and analysed on the smartphone.

## Vehicle messages

Messages are indicated mainly in the Driver Information Centre (DIC), in some cases together with a warning and signal buzzer.



Press **SET/CLR, MENU** or turn the adjuster wheel to confirm a message.

### Vehicle messages on the Midlevel-Display



The vehicle messages are displayed as code numbers.

#### No. Vehicle message

- 2 No radio remote control detected, depress clutch pedal to restart
- 4 Air conditioning off
- 5 Steering wheel is locked
- 6 Depress brake pedal to release electric parking brake

#### No. Vehicle message

- 7 Turn steering wheel, switch ignition off then on
- 9 Turn steering wheel, restart engine
- 12 Vehicle overloaded
- 13 Compressor overheated
- 15 Centre high-mounted brake light failure
- 16 Brake light failure
- 17 Headlight levelling malfunction
- 18 Left low beam failure
- 19 Rear fog light failure
- 20 Right low beam failure
- 21 Left sidelight failure
- 22 Right sidelight failure
- 23 Reversing light failure
- 24 Number plate light failure
- 25 Left front turn signal failure

#### No. Vehicle message

- 26 Left rear turn signal failure
- 27 Right front turn signal failure
- 28 Right rear turn signal failure
- 29 Check trailer brake light
- 30 Check trailer reversing light
- 31 Check left trailer turn signal
- 32 Check right trailer turn signal
- 33 Check trailer rear fog light
- 34 Check trailer rear light
- 35 Replace battery in radio remote control
- 48 Clean side blind spot alert system
- 49 Lane departure warning unavailable
- 53 Tighten fuel filler cap
- 54 Water in diesel fuel filter
- 55 Diesel particle filter is full  
↗ 169

**No. Vehicle message**

- 56 Tyre pressure imbalance on front axle
- 57 Tyre pressure imbalance on rear axle
- 58 Tyres without TPMS sensors detected
- 59 Open then close driver window
- 60 Open then close front passenger window
- 61 Open then close rear left window
- 62 Open then close rear right window
- 65 Theft attempted
- 66 Service anti-theft alarm system
- 67 Service steering wheel lock
- 68 Service power steering
- 69 Service suspension system
- 70 Service level control system

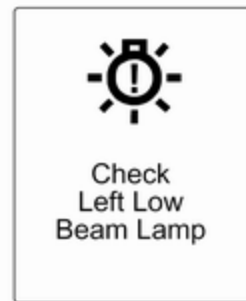
**No. Vehicle message**

- 71 Service rear axle
- 74 Service AFL
- 75 Service air conditioning
- 76 Service side blind spot alert system
- 77 Service lane departure warning
- 79 Top up engine oil
- 81 Service transmission
- 82 Change engine oil soon
- 83 Service adaptive cruise control
- 84 Engine power is reduced
- 89 Service vehicle soon
- 94 Shift to park position before exiting
- 95 Service airbag
- 128 Bonnet open
- 134 Park assist fault, clean bumper
- 136 Service parking assist

**No. Vehicle message**

- 145 Check washer fluid level
- 174 Low vehicle battery
- 258 Parking assist off

**Vehicle messages on the Uplevel-Combi-Display**



The vehicle messages are displayed as text. Follow the instructions given in the messages.

The system displays messages regarding the following topics:

- fluid levels
- anti-theft alarm system
- brakes
- drive systems
- ride control systems
- cruise control
- object detection systems
- lighting, bulb replacement
- wiper/washer system
- doors, windows
- radio remote control
- seat belts
- airbag systems
- engine and transmission
- tyre pressure
- diesel particle filter
- vehicle battery status

### **Vehicle messages on the Colour-Info-Display**

Some important messages appear additionally in the Colour-Info-Display. Press the multifunction knob to confirm a message. Some messages only pop-up for a few seconds.

### **Warning chimes**

#### **When starting the engine or whilst driving**

Only one warning chime will sound at a time.

The warning chime regarding unfastened seat belts has priority over any other warning chime.

- If seat belt is not fastened.
- If a door or the tailgate is not fully closed when starting off.
- If a certain speed is exceeded with parking brake applied.
- If a programmed speed is exceeded.

- If a warning message or a warning code appears in the Driver Information Centre (DIC).
- If the parking assist detects an object.
- If an unintended lane change occurs.
- If the reverse gear is engaged and the rear carrier system extended.
- If the diesel particle filter has reached the maximum filling level.

#### **When the vehicle is parked and/or the driver's door is opened**

- With exterior lights on.

#### **During an Autostop**

- If the driver's door is opened.

### **Battery voltage**

When the vehicle battery voltage is running low, a warning message or warning code 174 will appear in the Driver Information Centre.

1. Switch off immediately any electric consumers which are not required for a safe ride, e.g. seat heating, heated rear window or other main consumers.
2. Charge the vehicle battery by driving continuously for a while or by using a charging device.

The warning message or warning code will disappear after the engine has been started twice consecutively without a voltage drop.

If the vehicle battery cannot be recharged, have the cause of the fault remedied by a workshop.

## Trip computer

The menus and functions can be selected via the buttons on the turn signal lever ↷ 118.



Press **MENU** to select the **Trip/Fuel Information Menu**, or select /:↵ on the Uplevel-Combi-Display.



### Trip/Fuel Information Menu on Uplevel-Combi-Display

Turn the adjuster wheel to select the submenus:

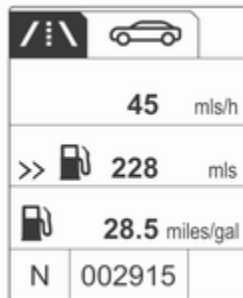


- trip odometer 1
- average consumption 1
- average speed 1



- trip odometer 2

- average consumption 2
- average speed 2



- digital speed
- range
- instantaneous consumption
- route guidance

### Trip computer 1 and 2

The information of two trip computers can be reset separately for odometer, average consumption and average speed by pressing **SET/CLR**, making it possible to display different trip information for different drivers.



### Trip odometer

Trip odometer displays the recorded distance since a certain reset.

Trip odometer counts up to a distance of 2000 miles and then restarts at 0.

To reset, press **SET/CLR** for a few seconds.


### Range

Range is calculated from current fuel tank content and current consumption. The display shows average values.

After refuelling, the range is updated automatically after a brief delay.

When the fuel level in the tank is low, a message appears on vehicles with Uplevel-Combi-Display.

When the tank needs to be refuelled immediately, a warning code or warning message is displayed on vehicles with Midlevel-Display or Uplevel-Combi-Display.

Additionally control indicator  illuminates or flashes in the fuel gauge ⇨ 116.

### **Average consumption**

Display of average consumption. The measurement can be reset at any time and starts with a default value.

To reset, press **SET/CLR** for a few seconds.

### **Instantaneous consumption**

Display of the instantaneous consumption.

### **Average speed**

Display of average speed. The measurement can be reset at any time.

To reset, press **SET/CLR** for a few seconds.

### **Digital speed**

Digital display of the instantaneous speed.

### **Traffic sign assistant**

Indicates detected traffic signs for the current route section ⇨ 209.

### **Route guidance**

In addition to the navigation information in the Colour-Info-Display, route guidance is displayed in the Driver Information Centre (DIC).

## **Vehicle personalisation**

The vehicle's behaviour can be personalised by changing the settings in the Info-Display.

Some of the personal settings for different drivers can be memorised individually for each vehicle key. Memorised settings ⇨ 22.

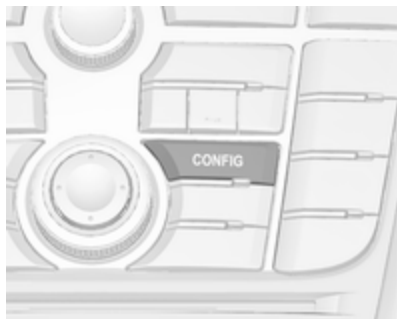
Depending on vehicle equipment and country-specific regulations some of the functions described below may not be available.

Some functions are only displayed or active when the engine is running.

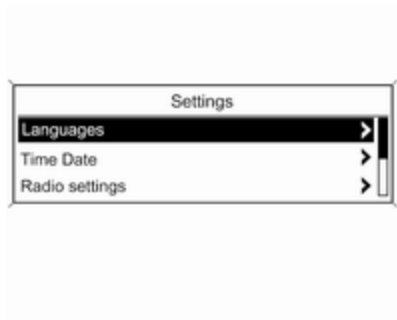
### **Personal settings in the Graphic-Info-Display**

CD 400plus/CD 400/CD 300





Press **CONFIG**. The menu **Settings** is displayed.



The following settings can be selected by turning and pressing the multifunction knob:

- **Sport mode settings**
- **Languages**
- **Time Date**
- **Radio settings**
- **Phone settings**
- **Vehicle settings**

In the corresponding submenus the following settings can be changed:

#### **Sport mode settings**

The driver can select the functions which will be activated in Sport mode ⇨ 180.

- **Sport suspension:** Damping becomes harder.
- **Sport powertrain performance:** Accelerator pedal and gear change characteristics become more responsive.
- **Sport steering:** Steering support is reduced.
- **Swap backlight colour main instr.:** Changes the instrument illumination colour.

#### **Languages**

Selection of the desired language.

#### **Time Date**

See Clock ⇨ 103.

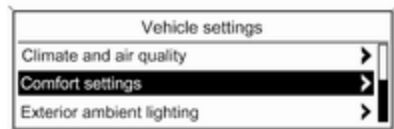
#### **Radio settings**

See description in the Infotainment system manual for further information.

#### **Phone settings**

See description in the Infotainment system manual for further information.

## Vehicle settings

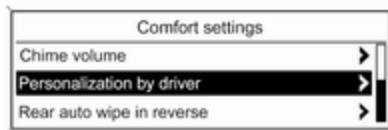


- **Climate and air quality**

**Auto fan speed:** Modifies the level of the cabin airflow of the climate control in automatic mode.

**Climate control mode:** Controls the state of the cooling compressor when the vehicle is started. Last setting (recommended) or at vehicle start is either always ON or always OFF.

**Auto rear demist:** Activates rear heated window automatically.



20340

- **Comfort settings**

**Chime volume:** Changes the volume of warning chimes.

**Personalization by driver:** Activates or deactivates the personalisation function.

**Rear auto wipe in reverse:** Activates or deactivates automatic switching on of the rear window wiper when reverse gear is engaged.

- **Park assist / Collision detection**

**Park assist:** Activates or deactivates the ultrasonic parking assist. Activation is

selectable with or without attached trailer coupling.

**Auto collision preparation:** Activates or deactivates the automatic brake functionality of the vehicle in the event of imminent collision danger. The following is selectable: the system will take over brake control, warn by chimes only or is deactivated.

**Side blind zone alert:** Changes the settings for the side blind spot alert system.

- **Exterior ambient lighting**

**Duration upon exit of vehicle:** Activates or deactivates and changes the duration of exit lighting.

**Exterior lighting by unlocking:** Activates or deactivates the welcome lighting.

- **Power door locks**

**Auto door lock:** Activates or deactivates the automatic door unlocking function after switching off ignition. Activates or

deactivates the automatic door locking function after driving-off.

**Stop door lock if door open:**

Activates or deactivates the automatic door locking function while a door is open.

**Delayed door lock:** Activates or deactivates the delayed door locking function.

- **Remote locking, unlocking, starting**

**Remote unlock feedback:**

Activates or deactivates the hazard warning flasher feedback whilst unlocking.

**Remote door unlock:** Changes the configuration to unlock only the driver's door or the whole vehicle whilst unlocking.

**Auto relock doors:** Activates or deactivates the automatic relock function after unlocking without opening the vehicle.

- **Restore factory settings**

**Restore factory settings:** Resets all settings to the default settings.

## Settings in the Colour-Info-Display

### Navi 950/Navi 650/CD 600

Press **CONFIG** on the Infotainment system faceplate to enter the Configuration menu.

Turn the multifunction knob to scroll upwards or downwards in the list. Press the multifunction knob (Navi 950 / Navi 650: press the outer ring) to select a menu item.



- **Sport Mode Profile**
- **Languages**
- **Time and Date**
- **Radio Settings**

- **Phone Settings**
- **Navigation Settings**
- **Display Settings**
- **Vehicle Settings**

In the corresponding submenus the following settings can be changed:

### Sport Mode Profile

- **Engine Sport Performance:** Accelerator pedal and gear change characteristics become more responsive.
- **Sport Mode Back Lighting:** Changes the instrument illumination colour.
- **Sport Suspension:** Damping becomes harder.
- **Sport Steering:** Steering support is reduced.

### Languages

Selection of the desired language.

### Time and Date

See Infotainment system manual for further information.

### Radio Settings

See Infotainment system manual for further information.

### Phone Settings

See Infotainment system manual for further information.

### Navigation Settings

See Infotainment system manual for further information.

### Display Settings

- **Home Page Menu:**

See Infotainment system manual for further information.

- **Rear Camera Options:**

Press to adjust the rear camera options ↻ 207.

- **Display Off:**

See Infotainment system manual for further information.

- **Map Settings:**

See Infotainment system manual for further information.

### Vehicle Settings

- **Climate and Air Quality**

**Auto Fan Speed:** Modifies the fan regulation. Changed setting will be active after switching the ignition off and on again.

**Air Conditioning Mode:** Activates or deactivates cooling when switching on the ignition or uses the last chosen setting.

**Auto Demist:** Activates or deactivates auto demist.

**Auto Rear Demist:** Activates the rear heated window automatically.

- **Comfort and Convenience**

**Chime Volume:** Changes the volume of warning chimes.

**Personalisation by Driver:** Activates or deactivates the personalisation function.

**Auto Reverse Gear Wiper:** Activates or deactivates automatic switching on of the rear window wiper when reverse gear is engaged.

- **Collision Detection Systems**

**Park Assist:** Activates or deactivates the ultrasonic sensors. Activation is selectable with or without attached trailer coupling.

**Automatic Collision Preparation:** Activates or deactivates the automatic brake functionality of the vehicle in the event of imminent collision danger. The following is selectable: the system will take over brake control, warn by chimes only or is deactivated completely.

**Side Blind Zone Alert:** Activates or deactivates the side blind spot alert system.

- **Lighting**

**Vehicle Locator Lights:** Activates or deactivates the entry lighting.

**Exit Lighting:** Activates or deactivates and changes the duration of exit lighting.

- **Power Door Locks**

**Open Door Anti Lock Out:** Activates or deactivates the

automatic door locking function while a door is open.

**Auto Door Lock:** Activates or deactivates the automatic door unlocking function after switching off ignition. Activates or deactivates the automatic door locking function after driving-off.

**Delay Door Lock:** Activates or deactivates the delayed door locking function.

- **Remote Lock/Unlock/Start**

**Remote Lock Feedback:** Activates or deactivates the hazard warning flasher feedback whilst locking.

**Remote Unlock Feedback:** Activates or deactivates the hazard warning flasher feedback whilst unlocking.

**Remote Door Unlock:** Changes the configuration to unlock only the driver's door or the whole vehicle whilst unlocking.

**Relock Remotely Unlocked Doors:** Activates or deactivates the automatic relock function

after unlocking without opening the vehicle.

- **Return to Factory Settings?:** Resets all settings to the default settings.

## OnStar® system


OnStar is a personal connectivity and mobility assistant with integrated Wi-Fi hotspot. The OnStar service is available 24 hours a day, seven days a week.

### Notice

OnStar is not available for all markets. For further information, contact your workshop.

### Notice

In order to be available and operational, OnStar needs a valid OnStar subscription, functioning vehicle electrics, mobile service and GPS satellite link.

To activate the OnStar services and set up an account, press  and speak with an OnStar advisor.

Depending on the equipment of the vehicle, the following services are available:

- OnStar emergency services and support in the case of a vehicle breakdown
- Wi-Fi hotspot

- OnStar smartphone application
- OnStar remote services, e.g. location of the vehicle, activation of horn and lights, control of central locking system
- Stolen vehicle assistance
- Vehicle health check
- Destination download

**Notice**

All functions requiring data connection to the vehicle are no longer available if the vehicle ignition has not been turned on for ten days.


**OnStar buttons**




**Notice**

Depending on the equipment, the OnStar buttons can also be integrated in the rear view mirror.


**Privacy button**

Press and hold  until an audio message is heard to activate or deactivate the transmission of the vehicle location.


Press  to answer a call or to end a call to an OnStar advisor.

Press  to access the Wi-Fi settings.

**OnStar button**

Press  to establish a connection to an OnStar advisor.

**SOS button**

Press  to establish a priority emergency connection to a specially trained emergency advisor.

**Status light**

Green: The system is ready.

Green flashing: The system is on a call.

Red: A problem arose.


Off: System is off.

Red / green flashing for a short period of time: Transmission of the vehicle location has been deactivated.

**OnStar services**

**OnStar emergency services**

OnStar emergency provides a service with specially trained emergency advisors for contact, assistance and information during an emergency.

In the case of an emergency situation including vehicle breakdown, a flat tyre or empty fuel tank, press  and talk to the advisor. The advisor then contacts emergency or assistance service providers and directs them to your vehicle.

In the case of an accident with activation of airbags or belt tensioners, an automatic emergency call is established. The advisor is immediately connected to your vehicle to see whether help is needed.

**OnStar Wi-Fi hotspot**


The Wi-Fi hotspot of the vehicle provides internet connectivity through the 4G/LTE mobile network.

**Notice**


The Wi-Fi hotspot functionality is not available for all markets.


Up to seven devices may be connected.

To connect a mobile device with the OnStar Wi-Fi hotspot:

1. Press  and then select Wi-Fi settings on the Info-Display. The settings displayed include the Wi-Fi hotspot name (SSID), password and connection type.
2. Start a Wi-Fi network search on your mobile device.
3. Select your vehicle hotspot (SSID) when listed.
4. When prompted, enter the password on your mobile device.

**Notice**

To change the SSID or password, select  and talk to an OnStar advisor or logon to your account.

To switch off the Wi-Fi hotspot functionality, press  to call an OnStar advisor.

**Smartphone app**

With the My Vauxhall smartphone app, some vehicle functions can be operated via a smartphone.

The following functions are available:

- Lock or unlock doors.
- Honk horn or flash lights.
- Check fuel level, engine oil life and tyre pressure (only with tyre pressure monitoring system).
- Send navigation destination to the vehicle, if equipped with a built-in navigation system.
- Locate vehicle on a map.
- Manage Wi-Fi settings.

To operate these functions, download the app from the respective app store.

**Remote service**

If desired, use any phone to call an OnStar advisor, who can remotely operate specific vehicle functions. Find the respective OnStar phone number on our country-specific website.

The following functions are available:

- Lock or unlock doors.
- Provide information on the vehicle location.
- Honk horn or flash lights.

**Stolen vehicle assistance**

If a vehicle is stolen, the OnStar stolen vehicle assistance service can provide support in locating and recovering the vehicle.

**Theft alert**

When the anti-theft alarm system is triggered, a notification is sent to OnStar. You are then informed about this event by text message or email.

If required, report the theft to the authorities and request OnStar stolen vehicle assistance. Use any phone to call an OnStar advisor. Find the respective OnStar phone number on our country-specific website.

**Remote ignition block**

By sending remote signals, OnStar can block the ignition cycle preventing the vehicle from restarting once it has been turned off.

### **On-demand diagnostics**

At any time e.g. if the vehicle displays a service message, press **Ⓜ** to contact an OnStar advisor and ask to complete a real-time diagnostic check to directly determine the issue.

Depending on the results, the advisor will provide further support.

### **Monthly vehicle diagnostics**

The vehicle automatically transmits diagnostic data to OnStar which sends a monthly email report to you and your preferred workshop.

#### **Notice**

The workshop notification function can be disabled in your account.

The report contains the status of key operating systems of the vehicle like engine, transmission, airbags, antilock brakes, and other major systems. It also provides information on possible maintenance items and tyre pressure (only with tyre pressure monitoring system).

To look at the information in greater detail, select the link within the email and log into your account.

### **Destination download**

A desired destination can be directly downloaded to the navigation system.

Press **Ⓜ** to call an OnStar advisor and describe the destination or point of interest.

The OnStar advisor can look up any address or point of interest and directly download the destination to the built-in navigation system.

### **OnStar settings**

#### **OnStar PIN**

To have full access to all OnStar services, a four-digit PIN is required. The PIN has to be personalised when first talking to an OnStar advisor.

To change the PIN, press **Ⓜ** to call an OnStar advisor.

#### **Account data**

An OnStar subscriber has an account, where all the data is stored. To request a change of the account information, press **Ⓜ** and talk to an OnStar advisor or logon to your account.

If the OnStar service is used on another vehicle, press **Ⓜ** and request that the account be transferred to the new vehicle.

#### **Notice**

In any case, if the vehicle is disposed of, sold or otherwise transferred, immediately inform OnStar about the changes and terminate the OnStar service on this vehicle.

### **Vehicle location**

The vehicle location is transmitted to OnStar when service is requested or triggered. A message on the Info-Display informs about this transmission.

To activate or deactivate the transmission of the vehicle location, press and hold **Ⓜ** until an audio message is heard.

The deactivation is indicated by the status light flashing red and green for a short period of time and each time the vehicle is started.

#### **Notice**

If the transmission of the vehicle location is deactivated, some services are no longer available.



**Notice**

The vehicle location always remains accessible to OnStar in the case of an emergency.

Find the privacy policy in your account.

**Software updates**

OnStar may remotely carry out software updates without further notice or consent. These updates are to enhance or maintain safety and security or the operation of the vehicle.

These updates may concern privacy issues. Find the privacy policy in your account.

## Lighting

<b>Exterior lighting</b> .....	<b>140</b>
Light switch .....	140
Automatic light control .....	141
High beam .....	142
High beam assist .....	142
Headlight flash .....	142
Headlight range adjustment ....	143
Headlights when driving abroad .....	143
Daytime running lights .....	144
Adaptive forward lighting .....	144
Hazard warning flashers .....	147
Turn and lane-change signals .	147
Front fog lights .....	148
Rear fog lights .....	148
Parking lights .....	148
Reversing lights .....	149
Misted light covers .....	149
<b>Interior lighting</b> .....	<b>149</b>
Instrument panel illumination control .....	149
Interior lights .....	149
Reading lights .....	150
Sunvisor lights .....	150

<b>Lighting features</b> .....	<b>151</b>
Centre console lighting .....	151
Entry lighting .....	151
Exit lighting .....	151
Battery discharge protection ....	152

## Exterior lighting

### Light switch



Turn light switch:




- O** : lights off
- ☞☞** : sidelights
- ☞D** : low beam

Control indicator ☞☞☞ 117.

## Light switch with Automatic light control






Turn light switch:

- AUTO** : automatic light control: low beam is switched on and off automatically depending on external lighting conditions
-  : activation or deactivation of the automatic light control. Switch turns back to **AUTO**
-  : sidelights
-  : low beam

In the Driver Information Centre (DIC) with Uplevel-Combi-Display, the current status of the automatic light control is displayed.

When switching on the ignition, automatic light control is active.

When low beam is on,  illuminates. Control indicator   117.

## Tail lights

Tail lights are illuminated together with low/high beam and sidelights.

## Automatic light control



When the automatic light control function is switched on and the engine is running, the system switches between daytime running light and headlights automatically

depending on the lighting conditions and information given by the rain sensor system.

Daytime running light  144.

## Automatic headlight activation

During poor lighting conditions the headlights are switched on.

Furthermore the headlights are switched on if the windscreen wipers have been activated for several wipes.

## Tunnel detection

When a tunnel is entered the headlights are switched on immediately.

Adaptive forward lighting  144.

## High beam



To switch from low to high beam, push lever.

To switch to low beam, push lever again or pull.

## High beam assist

Description for version with halogen headlights. High beam assist with adaptive forward lighting ↗ 144.

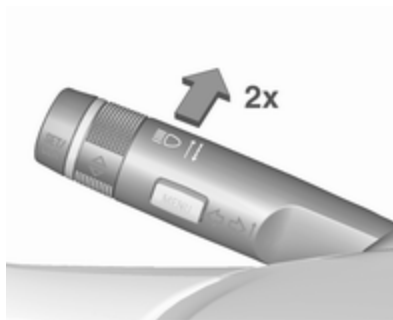
This feature allows high beam to function as the main driving light at night and when vehicle speed is faster than 25 mph.

It switches to low beam when:



- A sensor detects the lights of oncoming or preceding vehicles.
- The vehicle speed is slower than 12 mph.
- It is foggy or snowy.
- Driving in urban areas.

If there are no restrictions detected, the system switches back to high beam.

## Activation



The high beam assist is activated by pushing the indicator lever twice with a speed above 25 mph.

The green control indicator  illuminates continuously when the assist is activated, the blue one  illuminates when high beam is on.

Control indicator  ↗ 117.

## Deactivation

Push indicator lever once. It is also deactivated when front fog lights are switched on.

If a headlight flash is activated when the high beam is on, the high beam assist will be deactivated.

If a headlight flash is activated when the high beam is off, the high beam assist will stay activated.

The latest setting of the high beam assist will remain after the ignition is switched on again.


## Headlight flash

To activate the headlight flash, pull lever.


## Headlight range adjustment

### Manual headlight range adjustment



To adapt headlight range to the vehicle load to prevent dazzling: turn thumb wheel  to required position.

- 0 : front seats occupied
- 1 : all seats occupied
- 2 : all seats occupied and load compartment laden
- 3 : driver's seat occupied and load compartment laden

Dynamic automatic headlight levelling  144.

## Headlights when driving abroad

The asymmetrical headlight beam extends visibility at the edge of the road at the passenger side.


However, when driving in countries where traffic drives on the opposite side of the road, adjust the headlights to prevent dazzling of oncoming traffic.

### Vehicles with halogen headlight system


The headlights do not have to be adjusted.

### Vehicles with Xenon headlight system



1. Key in ignition switch.
2. Pull turn signal lever and hold (headlight flash).
3. Switch on ignition.
4. After approx. 5 seconds the control indicator  starts flashing and an acoustic signal sounds.

Control indicator   117.

Every time the ignition is switched on,  flashes as a reminder for approx. 4 seconds.

For deactivation, operate the same procedure as described above. ☼ will not flash when function is deactivated.

## Daytime running lights

Daytime running lights increase visibility of the vehicle during daylight.

They are switched on automatically when ignition is on.

If the vehicle is equipped with automatic light control function, the system switches between daytime running light and low/high beam automatically depending on the lighting conditions and information given by the rain sensor system. Automatic light control ⇨ 141.

## Adaptive forward lighting

The Adaptive forward lighting functions are only available with Bi-Xenon headlights. Light range, light distribution and intensity of light are variably triggered depending on the light conditions, weather and road type.

With the light switch in position **AUTO** all lighting functions are available.

The following functions are available also with light switch in position **D**:

- dynamic curve lighting
- cornering light
- reversing function
- dynamic automatic headlight levelling

## Playstreet lighting

Activated automatically at low speed up to approx. 20 mph. The light beam is turned at an angle of 8° to the roadside.

## Town lighting

Activated automatically at a speed range between approx. 25 and 34 mph and when street lights are detected by the light sensor. The light range is reduced by an extended light distribution.

## Country lighting

Activated automatically at a speed range between approx. 34 and 70 mph. The beam of light and the brightness is different between the left and the right side.

## Motorway lighting

Activated automatically at a speed above approx. 70 mph and minimal steering movements. It switches on after a delay or directly when the vehicle is powerfully accelerated. The light beam is longer and brighter.

## Adverse weather lighting

Activated automatically up to a speed of approx. 43 mph, when the rain sensor recognizes condensation or the wiper operates continuously. The range, distribution and light intensity is regulated variably depending on visibility.

## Dynamic curve lighting



The light beam pivots based on steering wheel angle and speed, improving lighting in curves.

Control indicator  ↻ 117.

## Corner lighting



On tight bends or when turning off, depending on the steering angle or the turn signal light, an additional left or right reflector is switched on which illuminates the road at a right angle to the direction of travel. It is activated up to a speed of 25 mph.

Control indicator  ↻ 117.

## Reversing function

If the headlights are on and reverse gear is engaged, both corner lights are switched on. They remain illuminated for 20 seconds after disengaging reverse gear or until driving faster than 10 mph in a forward gear.

## High Beam Assist

This feature allows high beam as main driving light by night and when vehicle speed is faster than 25 mph.

It switches to low beam when:



- The camera in the windscreen detects the lights of oncoming or preceding vehicles.
- The vehicle speed is slower than 12 mph.
- It is foggy or snowy.
- Driving in urban areas.

If there are no restrictions detected, the system switches back to high beam.

## Activation



The high beam assist is activated by pushing the indicator lever twice with a speed above 25 mph.

The green control indicator  illuminates continuously when the assist is activated, the blue one  illuminates when high beam is on.

Control indicator  ↻ 117.

## Deactivation

Push indicator lever once. It is also deactivated when front fog lights are switched on.

If a headlight flash is activated when the high beam is on, the high beam assist will be deactivated.

If a headlight flash is activated when the high beam is off, the high beam assist will stay activated.

High beam assist is always active after the ignition is switched on.

### Intelligent light ranging with automatic high beam activation

Intelligent light ranging uses the properties of Bi-Xenon headlights to extend the light range of the low beam by up to 400 metres and additionally activates automatic high beam without dazzling or disturbing oncoming or preceding traffic.

High beam is deactivated and the low beam light range is reduced to avoid dazzling when the following restrictions are detected by the front camera in the windscreen:

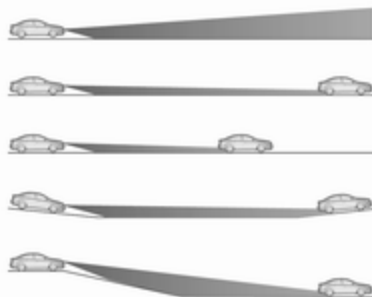
- A preceding vehicle is recognised.
- An oncoming vehicle is recognised.

- Urban areas are entered.
- It is foggy or snowy.

If there are no restrictions detected, the system switches back to high beam.

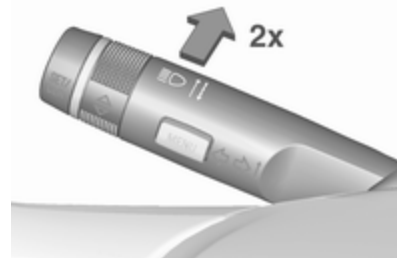
When the system is active, the front camera monitors the area ahead of the vehicle and ensures an optimum light distribution for maximum driver vision during almost all conditions.

Intelligent light ranging with automatic high beam activation therefore reduces the difference between conventional low and high beam without drastic changes in light-range, distribution and intensity.



A special topographical evaluation function detects preceding vehicles on hills or slopes by recognising the rear light moving ahead. The system adjusts the height of the light range to ensure optimum illumination on the road ahead without dazzling.



### Activation



Intelligent light ranging and automatic high beam activation are switched on together by pushing the indicator lever twice. They can be switched on with ignition on.



Automatic high beam activation operates at a speed above 25 mph and deactivates below 12 mph. Intelligent light ranging operates above 35 mph.

The green control indicator  illuminates continuously when the function is activated, the blue one  illuminates when high beam switches on automatically.

#### Deactivation

Push indicator lever once. It is also deactivated when front fog lights are switched on.

#### Dynamic automatic headlight levelling

To prevent oncoming traffic from dazzle, headlight levelling is automatically adjusted based on inclination information measured by front and rear axle, acceleration or deceleration and vehicle speed.

#### Fault in adaptive forward lighting system

When the system detects a failure in the Adaptive forward lighting system, the system moves to a preset position to avoid dazzling of oncoming traffic. If this is not possible the affected headlight will be automatically switched off. In any case one headlight will stay on. A warning is displayed in the Driver Information Centre (DIC).

#### Hazard warning flashers



Operated by pressing .

In the event of an accident with airbag deployment the hazard warning flashers are activated automatically.

#### Turn and lane-change signals



lever up : right turn signal  
 lever down : left turn signal

If the lever is moved past the resistance point, the turn signal is switched on constantly. When the steering wheel moves back, the turn signal is automatically deactivated.

For three flashes, e.g. when changing lanes, press the lever until resistance is felt and then release.

When a trailer is connected, turn signal flashes six times when pressing the lever until resistance is felt and then releasing.

Move the lever to the resistance point and hold for longer indication.

Switch the turn signal off manually by moving the lever to its original position.

## Front fog lights



Operated by pressing 0.

Light switch in position **AUTO**: switching on front fog lights will switch headlights on automatically.

## Rear fog lights



Operated by pressing 0.

Light switch in position **AUTO**: switching on rear fog light will switch headlights on automatically.

Light switch in position **☛**: rear fog light can only be switched on with front fog lights.

The vehicle rear fog light is deactivated when towing.

## Parking lights



When the vehicle is parked, the parking lights on one side can be activated:

1. Switch off ignition.
2. Move turn signal lever all the way up (right parking lights) or down (left parking lights).

Confirmed by a signal and the corresponding turn signal indicator.

## Reversing lights

The reversing light comes on when the ignition is on and reverse gear is selected.

## Misted light covers

The inside of the light housing may mist up briefly in poor, wet and cold weather conditions, in heavy rain or after washing. The mist disappears quickly by itself; to help switch on the headlights.


## Interior lighting

### Instrument panel illumination control



Brightness of the following lights can be adjusted when the exterior lights are on:

- instrument panel illumination
- Info-Display
- illuminated switches and operation elements

Turn thumb wheel  and hold until the desired brightness is obtained.

On vehicles with light sensor, the brightness can only be adjusted when the exterior lights are on and the light sensor detects night conditions.

## Interior lights

During entry and exit of the vehicle, the front and rear courtesy lights automatically switch on and then off after a delay.


### Notice

In the event of an accident with airbag deployment the courtesy lights are turned on automatically.

## Front courtesy light



Operate rocker switch:

 : automatic switching on and off

press  : on

press  : off

**Courtesy light on version with panorama roof**



Left and right lamps are separately switchable.

Operate rocker switches:

centre position : automatic switching on and off

press I : on

press 0 : off

### Rear courtesy lights





Illuminates in conjunction with the front courtesy light depending on rocker switch position.

Press  or  to switch on manually.

### Reading lights



Operated by pressing  and  in front and rear courtesy lights.

### Sunvisor lights

Illuminates when the cover is opened.

## Lighting features

### Centre console lighting

Spotlight incorporated in the interior lighting comes on when headlights are switched on.

### Entry lighting

#### Welcome lighting

The following lights are switched on for a short time by unlocking the vehicle with the radio remote control:

- headlights
- tail lights
- number plate lights
- instrument panel light
- interior lights
- door and console lights
- puddle lights

Some functions work only in the dark and facilitates locating the vehicle.

The lighting switches off immediately when the ignition key is turned to position 1 ⇨ 165.

Activation or deactivation of this function can be changed in the Settings menu in the Info-Display. Vehicle personalisation ⇨ 130.

The settings can be saved for the key being used ⇨ 22.

The following lights will additionally switch on when the driver's door is opened:

- all switches
- Driver Information Centre (DIC)
- door pocket lights
- console lights

### Exit lighting

The following lights switch on if the key is removed from the ignition switch:

- interior lights
- instrument panel light (only when it is dark)
- door lights
- puddle lights

They will switch off automatically after a delay and will be activated again if the driver's door is opened.

### Path lighting

Headlights, tail lights and number plate lights illuminate the surrounding area for an adjustable time after leaving the vehicle.

#### Activating



1. Switch off ignition.
2. Remove ignition key.
3. Open driver's door.
4. Pull turn signal lever.
5. Close driver's door.

If the driver's door is not closed the lights switch off after two minutes.

Exit lighting is switched off immediately if the turn signal lever is pulled while the driver's door is open.

Activation, deactivation and duration of this function can be changed in the Settings menu in the Info-Display.

Vehicle personalisation ⇨ 130.

The settings can be saved for the key being used ⇨ 22.

### **Battery discharge protection**

#### **Vehicle battery state of charge function**

The function guarantees longest vehicle battery life via a generator with controllable power output and optimised power distribution.

To prevent discharge of the vehicle battery when driving, the following systems are reduced automatically in two stages and finally switched off:

- Auxiliary heater
- Heated rear window and mirrors
- Heated seats
- Fan

In the second stage a message which confirms the activation of the vehicle battery discharge protection will be displayed in the Driver Information Centre (DIC).

#### **Switching off electric lights**

To prevent discharge of the vehicle battery when the ignition is switched off, some interior lights are switched off automatically after some time.

## Climate control

<b>Climate control systems</b> .....	<b>153</b>
Heating and ventilation system	153
Air conditioning system .....	154
Electronic climate control system .....	156
Auxiliary heater .....	160
<b>Air vents</b> .....	<b>161</b>
Adjustable air vents .....	161
Fixed air vents .....	161
<b>Maintenance</b> .....	<b>161</b>
Air intake .....	161
Pollen filter .....	161
Air conditioning regular operation .....	162
Service .....	162

## Climate control systems

### Heating and ventilation system



Controls for:

- temperature
- air distribution
- fan speed
- demisting and defrosting




Heated rear window  ⇨ 35.

### Temperature

red : warm  
blue : cold

Heating will not be fully effective until the engine has reached normal operating temperature.

### Air distribution

-  : to windscreen and front door windows
-  : to head area via adjustable air vents
-  : to foot well

All combinations are possible.

### Fan speed

Adjust the air flow by switching the fan to the desired speed.

### Demisting and defrosting



- Press : fan automatically switches to higher speed, the air distribution is directed towards the windscreen.
- Set temperature control to warmest level.
- Switch on heated rear window .
- Open side air vents as required and direct them towards the door windows.

### Air conditioning system



In addition to the heating and ventilation system, the air conditioning system has controls for:

- : cooling
- : air recirculation

Heated seats ↗ 45, Heated steering wheel ↗ 99.

### Cooling



Press to switch on cooling. Activation is indicated by illumination of the LED in the button. Cooling is only functional when the engine is running and climate control fan is switched on.

Press again to switch off cooling.


The air conditioning system cools and dehumidifies (dries) as soon as the outside temperature is slightly above the freezing point. Therefore condensation may form and drip from under the vehicle.




If no cooling or drying is required, switch off the cooling system for fuel saving reasons. Activated cooling may inhibit Autostops.

### Air recirculation system




Press  to activate air recirculation mode. Activation is indicated by the LED in the button.

Press  again to deactivate air recirculation mode.

### Warning




The exchange of fresh air is reduced in air recirculation mode. In operation without cooling the air humidity increases, so the windows may mist up from inside. The quality of the passenger compartment air deteriorates, which may cause the vehicle occupants to feel drowsy.

In warm and very humid ambient air conditions, the windscreen may mist up from outside, when cold air is directed to it. If windscreen mists up from outside, activate windscreen wiper and deactivate .

### Maximum cooling





Briefly open the windows so that hot air can disperse quickly.



- Switch on cooling .
- Air circulation system  on.
- Press air distribution switch .
- Set temperature control to coldest level.
- Set fan speed to highest level.
- Open all vents.



### Demisting and defrosting the windows





- Press : fan automatically switches to higher speed, the air distribution is directed towards the windscreen.
- Set temperature control to warmest level.
- Switch on heated rear window .
- Open side air vents as required and direct them towards the door windows.

### Notice

If  is pressed while the engine is running, an Autostop will be inhibited until  is pressed again.

If  is pressed with the fan switched on and the engine running, an Autostop will be inhibited until  is pressed again or until the fan is switched off.

If  is pressed while the engine is in an Autostop, the engine will restart automatically.

If  is pressed with the fan switched on while the engine is in an Autostop, the engine will restart automatically.

Stop-start system  166.

### Electronic climate control system




The dual zone climate control allows different climatisation temperatures for driver side and front passenger side.

In automatic mode, temperature, fan speed and air distribution are regulated automatically.

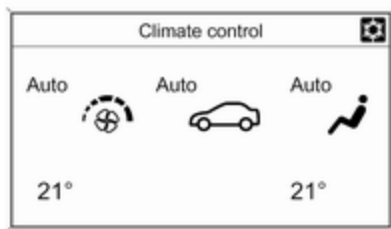


Controls for:

- temperature on driver side
- air distribution
- fan speed
- temperature on front passenger side

-  : cooling
- AUTO** : automatic mode
-  : manual air recirculation
-  : demisting and defrosting

Heated rear window   35, Heated seats   45, Heated steering wheel   99.



Each change of settings is shown in the Info-Display for a few seconds.


The electronic climate control system is only fully operational when the engine is running.

### Automatic mode AUTO



Basic setting for maximum comfort:

- Press **AUTO**, the air distribution and fan speed are regulated automatically.
- Open all air vents to allow optimised air distribution in automatic mode.

- Press  to switch on optimal cooling and demisting. Activation is indicated by illumination of the LED in the button.
- Set the preselected temperatures for driver and front passenger using the left and right rotary knobs. Recommended temperature is 22 °C.


The fan speed regulation in automatic mode can be changed in the Settings menu.

Vehicle personalisation  130.

### Temperature preselection


Set temperatures to the desired value.



If the minimum temperature **Lo** is set, the climate control system runs at maximum cooling, if cooling  is switched on.




If the maximum temperature **Hi** is set, the climate control system runs at maximum heating.


#### Notice

If  is switched on, reducing the set cabin temperature can cause the engine to restart from an Autostop or inhibit an Autostop.



### Demisting and defrosting the windows






- Press . Activation is indicated by illumination of the LED in the button.
- Temperature and air distribution are set automatically and the fan runs at high speed.
- Switch on heated rear window .
- To return to previous mode: press . To return to automatic mode: press **AUTO**.


Setting of automatic rear window heating can be changed in the Settings menu in the Info-Display. Vehicle personalisation  130.

#### Notice

If  is pressed while the engine is running, an Autostop will be inhibited until  is pressed again.

If  is pressed with the fan switched on and the engine running, an Autostop will be inhibited until  is pressed again or until the fan is switched off.

If  is pressed while the engine is in an Autostop, the engine will restart automatically.

If  is pressed with the fan switched on while the engine is in an Autostop, the engine will restart automatically.

Stop-start system  166.

### Manual settings

Climate control system settings can be changed by activating the buttons and rotary knobs as follows. Changing a setting will deactivate the automatic mode.

### Fan speed



Press lower button to decrease or upper button to increase fan speed as shown in the illustration. The fan speed is indicated by the number of segments in the display.

Pressing the lower button for longer: fan and cooling are switched off.


Pressing the upper button for longer: the fan runs at maximum speed.


To return to automatic mode: Press **AUTO**.

### Air distribution



Press appropriate button for desired adjustment. Activation is indicated by illumination of the LED in the button.

 : to windscreen and front door windows (air conditioning is activated in the background to help preventing windows from fogging)

 : to head area via adjustable air vents


 : to foot well

All combinations are possible.

Return to automatic air distribution: press **AUTO**.

### Cooling



Press  to switch on cooling. Activation is indicated by illumination of the LED in the button. Cooling is only functional when the engine is running and climate control fan is switched on.

Press  again to switch off cooling.

The air conditioning system cools and dehumidifies (dries) when outside temperature is above a specific level. Therefore condensation may form and drip from under the vehicle.

If no cooling or drying is required, switch off the cooling system for fuel saving reasons. When the cooling


system is switched off, no engine restart will be requested by the climate control system during an Autostop. Exception: defrost system is activated and outside temperature above 0 °C.


The display will indicate **ACON** when cooling is activated or **ACOFF** when the cooling is deactivated.

Activation or deactivation of cooling operation after engine start can be changed in the Settings menu in the Info-Display. Vehicle personalisation ⇨ 130.

### Air recirculation mode




Press  to activate the air recirculation mode. Activation is indicated by illumination of the LED in the button.

Press  again to deactivate recirculation mode.

### Warning

The exchange of fresh air is reduced in air recirculation mode. In operation without cooling the air humidity increases, so the windows may mist up from inside. The quality of the passenger compartment air deteriorates, which may cause the vehicle occupants to feel drowsy.

In warm and very humid ambient air conditions, the windscreen may mist up from outside when cold air is directed towards it. If windscreen mists up from outside, activate windscreen wiper and deactivate .

### Basic settings

Some settings can be changed in the Settings menu in the Info-Display. Vehicle personalisation ⇨ 130.

### Auxiliary heater

#### Air heater

Quickheat is an electric auxiliary air heater which automatically warms up the passenger compartment more quickly.

## Air vents

### Adjustable air vents

At least one air vent must be open while the cooling is on.



To open the vent, turn the adjuster wheel towards the bigger ■ symbol. Adjust the air amount at the vent outlet by turning the adjuster wheel.



Direct the flow of air by tilting and swivelling the slats.

To close the vent, turn the adjuster wheel towards the smaller ■ symbol.

### Warning

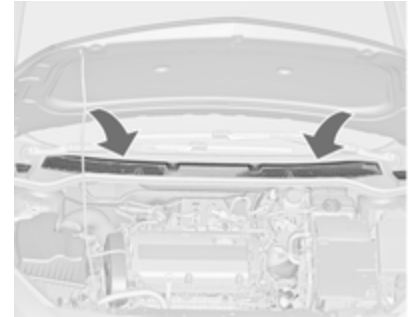
Do not attach any objects to the slats of the air vents. Risk of damage and injury in case of an accident.

### Fixed air vents

Additional air vents are located beneath the windscreen and door windows and in the foot wells.

## Maintenance

### Air intake



The air intake in front of the windscreen in the engine compartment must be kept clear to allow air intake. Remove any leaves, dirt or snow.

### Pollen filter

The pollen filter cleans dust, soot, pollen and spores from the air entering the vehicle through the air intake.

## Air conditioning regular operation

In order to ensure continuously efficient performance, cooling must be operated for a few minutes once a month, irrespective of the weather and time of year. Operation with cooling is not possible when the outside temperature is too low.

## Service

For optimal cooling performance, it is recommended to annually check the climate control system, starting three years after initial vehicle registration, including:

- functionality and pressure test
- heating functionality
- leakage check
- check of drive belts
- cleaning of condenser and evaporator drainage
- performance check



# Driving and operating

<b>Driving hints</b> .....	<b>164</b>	<b>Brakes</b> .....	<b>175</b>	<b>Trailer hitch</b> .....	<b>219</b>
Control of the vehicle .....	164	Antilock brake system .....	175	General information .....	219
Steering .....	164	Parking brake .....	176	Driving characteristics and towing tips .....	220
<b>Starting and operating</b> .....	<b>164</b>	Brake assist .....	178	Trailer towing .....	220
New vehicle running-in .....	164	Hill start assist .....	178	Towing equipment .....	221
Ignition switch positions .....	165	<b>Ride control systems</b> .....	<b>178</b>	Trailer stability assist .....	224
Retained power off .....	165	Traction Control system .....	178		
Starting the engine .....	165	Electronic Stability Control .....	179		
Overrun cut-off .....	166	Interactive driving system .....	180		
Stop-start system .....	166	<b>Driver assistance systems</b> .....	<b>183</b>		
Parking .....	168	Cruise control .....	183		
<b>Engine exhaust</b> .....	<b>169</b>	Speed limiter .....	185		
Diesel particle filter .....	169	Adaptive cruise control .....	186		
Catalytic converter .....	170	Forward collision alert .....	193		
<b>Automatic transmission</b> .....	<b>171</b>	Following distance indication ...	196		
Transmission display .....	171	Active Emergency Braking .....	196		
Selector lever .....	172	Parking assist .....	198		
Manual mode .....	173	Side blind spot alert .....	206		
Electronic driving programmes	173	Rear view camera .....	207		
Fault .....	173	Traffic sign assistant .....	209		
Interruption of power supply ....	174	Lane departure warning .....	212		
<b>Manual transmission</b> .....	<b>175</b>	<b>Fuel</b> .....	<b>213</b>		
		Fuel for petrol engines .....	213		
		Fuel for diesel engines .....	213		
		Fuel for liquid gas operation ...	214		
		Refuelling .....	215		
		Fuel consumption - CO <sub>2</sub> - Emissions .....	219		

## Driving hints

### Control of the vehicle

#### Never coast with engine not running (except during Autostop)

Many systems will not function in this situation (e.g. brake servo unit, power steering). Driving in this manner is a danger to yourself and others. All systems function during an Autostop, but there will be a controlled reduction in power steering assist and vehicle speed is reduced.

Stop-start system ⇨ 166.

#### Idle boost

If charging of the vehicle battery is required due to battery condition, the power output of the generator must be increased. This will be achieved by an idle boost which may be audible.

A message is displayed in the Driver Information Centre.

### Pedals

To ensure the pedal travel is uninhibited, there must be no mats in the area of the pedals.

Use only floor mats which fit properly and are fixed by the retainers on the driver's side.

### Steering

If power steering assist is lost because the engine stops or due to a system malfunction, the vehicle can be steered but may require increased effort.

Control indicator ⚠ ⇨ 114.

## Starting and operating

### New vehicle running-in

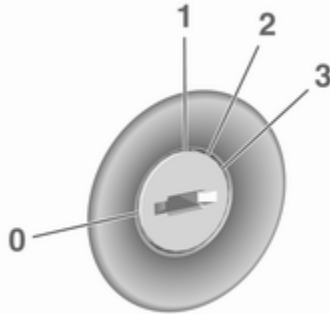
Do not brake unnecessarily hard for the first few journeys.

During the first drive, smoke may occur because of wax and oil evaporating off the exhaust system. Park the vehicle in the open for a while after the first drive and avoid inhaling the fumes.

During the running-in period fuel and engine oil consumption may be higher and the cleaning process of the diesel particle filter may take place more often. Autostop may be inhibited to allow for charging the battery.

Diesel particle filter ⇨ 169.

## Ignition switch positions



- 0 : ignition off
- 1 : steering wheel lock released, ignition off
- 2 : ignition on, for diesel engine: preheating
- 3 : starting

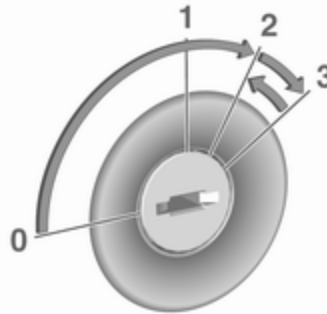
## Retained power off

The following electronic systems can work until the driver's door is opened or at the latest for 10 minutes after the ignition is switched off:

- power windows
- sunroof
- power outlets

Power to the Infotainment system will continue to operate for 30 minutes or until the key is removed from the ignition switch, regardless of whether any door will be opened.


## Starting the engine



Manual transmission: operate clutch.

Automatic transmission: operate brake and move the selector lever to **P** or **N**.

Do not operate the accelerator pedal.

Diesel engine: turn the key to position **2** for preheating until control indicator  extinguishes.

Turn the key briefly to position **3** and release: an automatic procedure operates the starter with a short delay as long as the engine is running, see Automatic Starter Control.

Before restarting or to switch off the engine, turn the key back to position **0**.

During an Autostop, the engine can be started by depressing the clutch pedal.

## Starting the vehicle at low temperatures

Starting the engine without additional heaters is possible down to -25 °C for diesel engines and -30 °C for petrol engines. Required is an engine oil with the correct viscosity, the correct fuel, performed services and a sufficiently charged vehicle battery. With temperatures below -30 °C the automatic transmission needs a warming phase of approx. 5 minutes. The selector lever must be in position **P**.

## Automatic Starter Control

This function controls the engine starting procedure. The driver does not need to hold the key in position **3**. Once applied, the system will go on starting automatically until the engine is running. Because of the checking procedure, the engine starts running after a short delay.

Possible reasons for a non-starting engine:

- Clutch pedal not operated (manual transmission).
- Brake pedal not operated or selector lever not in **P** or **N** (automatic transmission).
- Timeout occurred.

## Turbo engine warm-up

Upon start-up, engine available torque may be limited for a short time, especially when the engine temperature is cold. The limitation is to allow the lubrication system to fully protect the engine.

## Overrun cut-off

The fuel supply is automatically cut-off during overrun, i.e. when the vehicle is driven with a gear engaged but accelerator is released.

## Stop-start system

The stop-start system helps to save fuel and to reduce the exhaust emissions. When conditions allow, it switches off the engine as soon as the vehicle is at a low speed or at a standstill, e.g. at a traffic light or in a traffic jam. It starts the engine automatically as soon as the clutch is depressed. A battery sensor ensures that an Autostop is only performed if the vehicle battery is sufficiently charged for a restart.

## Activation

The stop-start system is available as soon as the engine is started, the vehicle starts-off and the conditions as stated below in this section are fulfilled.

## Deactivation



Deactivate the stop-start system manually by pressing **eco**. Deactivation is indicated when the LED in the button extinguishes.

## Autostop

If the vehicle is at a low speed or at a standstill, activate an Autostop as follows:

- Depress the clutch pedal.
- Set the lever in neutral.
- Release the clutch pedal.

The engine will be switched off while the ignition stays on.



An Autostop is indicated by the needle at the **AUTOSTOP** position in the tachometer.

During an Autostop, the heating and brake performance will be maintained.

### Caution

The power steering assist may be reduced during an Autostop.

### Conditions for an Autostop

The stop-start system checks if each of the following conditions is fulfilled:

- The stop-start system is not manually deactivated.
- The bonnet is fully closed.
- The driver's door is closed or the driver's seat belt is fastened.
- The vehicle battery is sufficiently charged and in good condition.
- The engine is warmed-up.
- The engine coolant temperature is not too high.
- The engine exhaust temperature is not too high, e.g. after driving with high engine load.
- The ambient temperature is above  $-5^{\circ}\text{C}$ .
- The climate control system allows an Autostop.
- The brake vacuum is sufficient.
- The self-cleaning function of the diesel particle filter is not active.
- The vehicle was driven at least at walking speed since the last Autostop.

Otherwise an Autostop will be inhibited.

Certain settings of the climate control system may inhibit an Autostop. See "**Climate control**" chapter for more details ↻ 156.

Immediately after motorway driving, an Autostop may be inhibited.

New vehicle running-in ↻ 164.

### Vehicle battery discharge protection

To ensure reliable engine restarts, several battery discharge protection features are implemented as part of the stop-start system.


### Power saving measures

During an Autostop, several electric features, e.g. auxiliary electric heater or rear window heating are disabled or switched into a power saving mode. The fan speed of the climate control system is reduced to save power.

### Restart of the engine by the driver

Depress the clutch pedal to restart the engine.

The engine start is indicated by the needle at the idle speed position in the tachometer.

If the selector lever is shifted out of neutral before depressing the clutch first, control indicator  illuminates or is shown as a symbol in the Driver Information Centre (DIC).

Control indicator  ⇨ 113.

### Restart of the engine by the stop-start system

The selector lever must be in neutral to enable an automatic restart.

If one of the following conditions occurs during an Autostop, the engine will be restarted automatically by the stop-start system:

- The stop-start system is manually deactivated.
- The bonnet is opened.
- The driver's seat belt is unfastened and the driver's door is opened.
- The engine temperature is too low.

- The charging level of the vehicle battery is below a defined level.
- The brake vacuum is not sufficient.
- The vehicle is driven at least at walking speed.
- The climate control system requests an engine start.
- The air conditioning is manually switched on.

If the bonnet is not fully closed, a warning message is displayed in the DIC.


If an electric accessory, e.g. a portable CD player, is connected to the power outlet, a brief power drop during restart might be noticeable.


### Parking

#### Warning

- Do not park the vehicle on an easily ignitable surface. The high temperature of the exhaust system could ignite the surface.

- Always apply the parking brake. Activate the manual parking brake without pressing the release button. Apply as firmly as possible on a downhill slope or uphill slope. Depress foot brake at the same time to reduce operating force.

For vehicles with electric parking brake, pull switch  for approx. one second.

The electric parking brake is applied when control indicator  illuminates ⇨ 113.

- Switch off the engine.
  - If the vehicle is on a level surface or uphill slope, engage first gear or set the selector lever to position **P** before removing the ignition key. On an uphill slope, turn the front wheels away from the kerb.
- If the vehicle is on a downhill slope, engage reverse gear or set the selector lever to position **P** before removing the ignition

key. Turn the front wheels towards the kerb.

- Close the windows and the sunroof.
- Remove the ignition key. Turn the steering wheel until the steering wheel lock is felt to engage.

For vehicles with automatic transmission, the key can only be removed when the selector lever is in position **P**.

- Lock the vehicle.
- Activate the anti-theft alarm system.
- The engine cooling fans may run after the engine has been switched off ⇨ 227.

### Caution

After running at high engine speeds or with high engine loads, operate the engine briefly at a low load or run in neutral for

approx. 30 seconds before switching off, in order to protect the turbocharger.

### Notice

In the event of an accident with airbag deployment, the engine is turned off automatically if the vehicle comes to a standstill within a certain time.

## Engine exhaust

### ⚠ Danger

Engine exhaust gases contain poisonous carbon monoxide, which is colourless and odourless and could be fatal if inhaled.

If exhaust gases enter the interior of the vehicle, open the windows. Have the cause of the fault rectified by a workshop.

Avoid driving with an open load compartment, otherwise exhaust gases could enter the vehicle.


## Diesel particle filter


The diesel particle filter system filters harmful soot particles out of the exhaust gases. The system includes a self-cleaning function that runs automatically during driving without any notification. The filter is cleaned by periodically burning off the soot particles at high temperature. This process takes place automatically under set driving conditions and may take up to 25 minutes. Typically it


needs between 7 and 12 minutes. Autostop is not available and fuel consumption may be higher during this period. The emission of smells and smoke during this process is normal.



Under certain driving conditions, e.g. short distances, the system cannot clean itself automatically.


If the cleaning of the filter is required and if previous driving conditions did not enable automatic cleaning, it will be indicated by control indicator . Simultaneously **Diesel partic. filter is full continue driving** or warning code 55 appears in the Driver Information Centre (DIC).

 illuminates when diesel particle filter is full. Start cleaning process as soon as possible.

 flashes when diesel particle filter has reached the maximum filling level. Start cleaning process immediately to avoid damage to the engine.

### Cleaning process


To activate cleaning process, continue driving, keep engine speed above 2000 revolutions per minute. Shift down if necessary. Diesel particle filter cleaning is then started.

If control indicator  illuminates additionally, cleaning is not possible, seek the assistance of a workshop.

#### Caution

If the cleaning process is interrupted, there is a risk of provoking severe engine damage.



Cleaning takes place quickest at high engine speeds and loads.

The control indicator  extinguishes as soon as the self-cleaning operation is complete.

### Catalytic converter

The catalytic converter reduces the amount of harmful substances in the exhaust gases.

#### Caution

Fuel grades other than those listed on pages  213,  293 could damage the catalytic converter or electronic components.

Unburnt petrol will overheat and damage the catalytic converter. Therefore avoid excessive use of the starter, running the fuel tank dry and starting the engine by pushing or towing.

In the event of misfiring, uneven engine running, a reduction in engine performance or other unusual problems, have the cause of the fault rectified by a workshop as soon as possible. In an emergency, driving



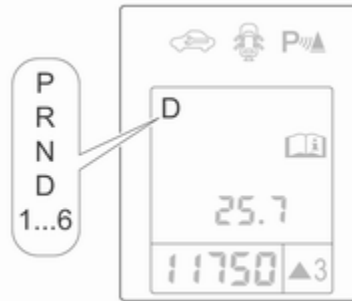
can be continued for a short period, keeping vehicle speed and engine speed low.

## Automatic transmission

The automatic transmission permits automatic gearshifting (automatic mode) or manual gearshifting (manual mode).

Manual shifting is possible in manual mode by tapping the selector lever ↻ 173.

## Transmission display



The mode or selected gear is shown in the transmission display.

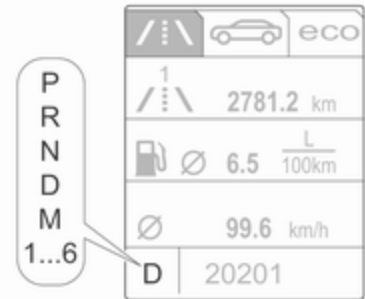
In automatic mode, the driving programme is indicated by **D** in the Driver Information Centre (DIC).

**R** indicates reverse gear.

**N** indicates neutral position.

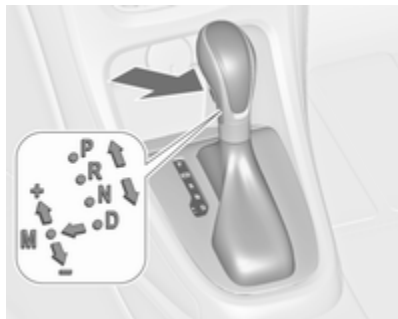
**P** indicates park position.

**Midlevel display:** in manual mode the number of the selected gear is indicated.



**Uplevel display:** in manual mode, **M** and the number of the selected gear is indicated.

## Selector lever



- P** : park position, press release button, wheels are locked, engage only when the vehicle is stationary and parking brake is applied
- R** : reverse gear, press release button, engage only when vehicle is stationary
- N** : neutral
- D** : automatic mode
- M** : manual mode: move selector lever from **D** to the left.

- +** : manual mode upshifting: move selector lever in position **M** and tap upwards
- : manual mode downshifting: move selector lever in position **M** and tap rearwards

The selector lever is locked in **P** and can only be moved when the ignition is on and the brake pedal is applied.



Without brake pedal applied, the control indicator (ⓘ) illuminates.

If the selector lever is not in **P** when the ignition is switched off, the control indicators (ⓘ) and **P** flash.

To engage **P** or **R**, press the release button.

The engine can only be started with the lever in position **P** or **N**. When position **N** is selected, press the brake pedal or apply the parking brake before starting.

Do not accelerate while engaging a gear. Never depress the accelerator pedal and brake pedal at the same time.

When a gear is engaged, the vehicle slowly begins to creep when the brake is released.

### Engine braking

To utilise the engine braking effect, select a lower gear in good time when driving downhill, see manual mode.

### Rocking the vehicle

Rocking the vehicle is only permissible if the vehicle is stuck in sand, mud or snow. Move the selector lever between **D** and **R** in a repeat pattern. Do not race the engine and avoid sudden acceleration.

## Parking

Apply the parking brake and engage **P**.

The ignition key can only be removed when the selector lever is in position **P**.

## Manual mode



Move selector lever out of position **D** towards the left to select manual mode **M**.

Tap selector lever

forwards **+** : shift to a higher gear

backwards **-** : shift to a lower gear

The selected gear is indicated in the instrument cluster.

If a higher gear is selected when vehicle speed is too low, or a lower gear when vehicle speed is too high, the shift is not executed. This can cause a message in the Driver Information Centre (DIC).

In manual mode, no automatic shifting to a higher gear takes place at high engine revolutions.

## Electronic driving programmes


- Following a cold start, the operating temperature programme increases engine speed to quickly bring the catalytic converter to the required temperature.
- The automatic neutral shift function automatically shifts to idling when the vehicle is stopped with a forward gear engaged and the brake pedal is pressed.

- When SPORT mode is engaged, the vehicle shifts at higher engine speeds (unless cruise control is on). SPORT mode ⇨ 180.
- Special programmes automatically adapt the shifting points when driving up inclines or down hills.
- When starting off in snowy or icy conditions or on other slippery surfaces, the electronic transmission control selects a higher gear automatically.

## Kickdown

If the accelerator pedal is pressed down completely in automatic mode, the transmission shifts to a lower gear depending on engine speed.

## Fault

In the event of a fault, control indicator  illuminates. Additionally, a code number or a vehicle message is displayed in the Driver Information Centre (DIC). Vehicle messages ⇨ 124.

The transmission no longer shifts automatically. Continued travel is possible with manual shifting.

Only the highest gear is available. Depending on the fault, 2nd gear may also be available in manual mode. Shift only when vehicle is at a standstill.

Have the cause of the fault remedied by a workshop.

### Interruption of power supply

In the event of an interruption of power supply, the selector lever cannot be moved out of the **P** position. The ignition key cannot be removed from the ignition switch.

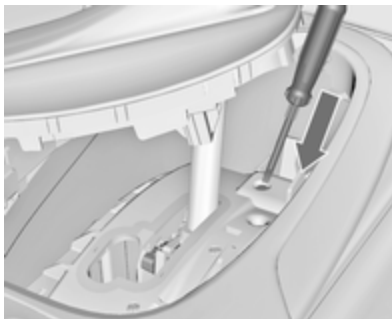
If the vehicle battery is discharged, start the vehicle using jump leads ⇨ 278.

If the vehicle battery is not the cause of the fault, release the selector lever.

1. Apply the parking brake.



2. Release the selector lever trim from the centre console at the front, fold it upwards and rotate it to the left.



3. Insert a screwdriver into the opening as far as it will go and move the selector lever out of **P** or **N**. If **P** or **N** is engaged again, the selector lever will be locked in position again. Have the cause of the power supply interruption remedied by a workshop.
4. Mount the selector lever trim onto the centre console and refit.

## Manual transmission



To engage reverse, with the vehicle stationary, depress clutch pedal, press the release button on the selector lever and engage the gear.

If the gear does not engage, set the lever to neutral, release the clutch pedal and depress again; then repeat gear selection.

Do not slip the clutch unnecessarily.

When operating, depress the clutch pedal completely. Do not use the pedal as a foot rest.

### Caution

It is not advisable to drive with the hand resting on the selector lever.

Upshift indication ⇨ 114.

## Brakes

The brake system comprises two independent brake circuits.

If a brake circuit fails, the vehicle can still be braked using the other brake circuit. However, braking effect is achieved only when the brake pedal is depressed firmly. Considerably more force is needed for this. The braking distance is extended. Seek the assistance of a workshop before continuing your journey.

When the engine is not running, the support of the brake servo unit disappears once the brake pedal has been depressed once or twice. Braking effect is not reduced, but braking requires significantly greater force. It is especially important to bear this in mind when being towed.

Control indicator (D) ⇨ 113.

## Antilock brake system

Antilock brake system (ABS) prevents the wheels from locking.

ABS starts to regulate brake pressure as soon as a wheel shows a tendency to lock. The vehicle remains steerable, even during hard braking.

ABS control is made apparent through a pulse in the brake pedal and the noise of the regulation process.

For optimum braking, keep the brake pedal fully depressed throughout the braking process, despite the fact that the pedal is pulsating. Do not reduce the pressure on the pedal.

After starting off the system performs a self-test which may be audible.

Control indicator (ABS) ⇨ 114.

### **Adaptive brake light**

During full braking, all three brake lights flash for the duration of ABS control.

### **Fault**

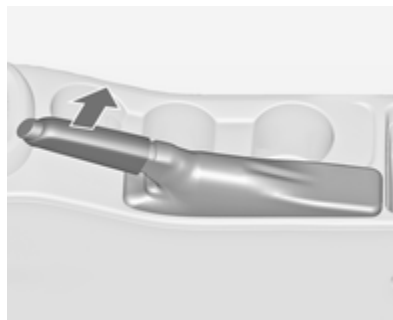
#### **⚠ Warning**

If there is a fault in the ABS, the wheels may be liable to lock due to braking that is heavier than normal. The advantages of ABS are no longer available. During hard braking, the vehicle can no longer be steered and may swerve.

Have the cause of the fault remedied by a workshop.

### **Parking brake**

#### **Manual parking brake**



#### **⚠ Warning**

Always apply parking brake firmly without operating the release button, and apply as firmly as possible on a downhill or uphill slope.

To release the parking brake, pull the lever up slightly, press the release button and fully lower the lever.

To reduce the operating forces of the parking brake, depress the foot brake at the same time.

Control indicator (D) ⇨ 113.

## Electric parking brake



### Applying when vehicle is stationary

#### **⚠ Warning**

Pull switch (E) for approx. one second, the electric parking brake operates automatically with

adequate force. For maximum force, e.g. parking with trailer or on inclines, pull switch (E) twice.

The electric parking brake is applied when control indicator (E) illuminates ⇨ 113.

The electric parking brake can always be activated, even if the ignition is off.

Do not operate electric parking brake system too often without engine running, as this will discharge the vehicle battery.

Before leaving the vehicle, check the electric parking brake status. Control indicator (E) ⇨ 113.

### Releasing

Switch on ignition. Keep brake pedal depressed and then push switch (E).

### Drive away function

Depressing clutch pedal (manual transmission) or engaging drive gear (automatic transmission) and then depressing the accelerator pedal releases the electric parking brake

automatically. This is not possible when the switch is pulled at the same time.

This function also helps driving away on inclines.

Aggressive drive away may reduce life time of wear parts.

### Dynamic braking when vehicle is moving

When the vehicle is moving and the switch (E) is kept pulled, the electric parking brake system will decelerate the vehicle, but will not apply statically.

As soon as the switch (E) is released, dynamic braking will be stopped.

### Fault

Failure mode of electric parking brake is indicated by control indicator (F) and by a code number or a vehicle message which is displayed in the Driver Information Centre (DIC). Vehicle messages ⇨ 124.

Apply electric parking brake: pull and hold the switch (P) for more than 5 seconds. If control indicator (P) illuminates, electric parking brake is applied.

Release electric parking brake: push and hold the switch (P) for more than 2 seconds. If control indicator (P) extinguishes, electric parking brake is released.

Control indicator (P) flashes: electric parking brake is not fully applied or released. When continuously flashing, release electric parking brake and retry applying.

## Brake assist

If the brake pedal is depressed quickly and forcefully, maximum brake force is automatically applied (full braking).

Maintain steady pressure on the brake pedal for as long as full braking is required. Maximum brake force is automatically reduced when the brake pedal is released.

## Hill start assist

The system helps prevent unintended movement when driving away on inclines.

When releasing the foot brake after stopping on an incline, the brakes remain on for a further two seconds. The brakes release automatically as soon as the vehicle begins to accelerate.

The hill start assist is not active during an Autostop.

## Ride control systems

### Traction Control system

The Traction Control system (TC) is a component of the Electronic Stability Control (ESC) ⇨ 179.

TC improves driving stability when necessary, regardless of the type of road surface or tyre grip, by preventing the drive wheels from spinning.

As soon as the drive wheels starts to spin, engine output is reduced and the wheel spinning the most is braked individually. This considerably improves the driving stability of the vehicle on slippery road surfaces.

TC is operational after each engine start as soon as the control indicator ⚡ extinguishes.

When TC operates ⚡ flashes.



**⚠ Warning**



Do not let this special safety feature tempt you into taking risks when driving.


Adapt speed to the road conditions.

Control indicator  ↗ 115.

**Deactivation**

TC can be switched off when spinning of drive wheels is required:

press  briefly to deactivate TC,  illuminates. Deactivation is displayed as status message in the Driver Information Centre (DIC).


TC is reactivated by pressing  again.

TC is also reactivated the next time the ignition is switched on.

**Electronic Stability Control**

Electronic Stability Control (ESC) improves driving stability when necessary, regardless of the type of road surface or tyre grip. It also prevents the drive wheels from spinning. ESC operates in combination with the Traction Control system (TC) ↗ 178.

As soon as the vehicle starts to swerve (understeer/oversteer), engine output is reduced and the wheels are braked individually. This considerably improves the driving stability of the vehicle on slippery road surfaces.

ESC is operational after each engine start as soon as the control indicator  extinguishes.

When ESC operates  flashes.

**⚠ Warning**






Do not let this special safety feature tempt you into taking risks when driving.

Adapt speed to the road conditions.

Control indicator  ↗ 115.


**Deactivation**

For a more sporty behaviour ESC and TC can be deactivated separately:

- Press  briefly: only Traction control system is inactive, ESC remains active,  illuminates.
- Hold  pressed for min. 5 seconds: TC and ESC are deactivated,  and  illuminate.

Additionally the selected mode is displayed as status message in the Driver Information Centre (DIC).

If the vehicle comes into threshold with deactivated ESP, the system will reactivate ESP for the time duration of the threshold, when the brake pedal is depressed once.









ESC is reactivated by pressing  again. If the TC system was previously disabled, both TC and ESC are reactivated.

ESC is also reactivated the next time the ignition is switched on.

## Deactivation, VXR version




For very high-performance driving ESC and TC can be deactivated separately. The following modes are selectable:

- Press  briefly: only Traction control system is inactive, ESC remains active,  illuminates.
- Press  twice briefly within 2 seconds: TC is inactive, ESC is operable without engine power reduction,  and  illuminate.
- Hold  pressed for min. 5 seconds: TC and ESC are completely inactive,  and  illuminate.

Additionally the selected mode is displayed as status message in the DIC.

On VXR version TC and ESC remain deactivated even if the vehicle comes into threshold with unstable driveability.

ESC is reactivated by pressing  again. If the TC system was previously disabled, both TC and ESC are reactivated.

ESC is also reactivated the next time the ignition is switched on.

## Interactive driving system

### Flex Ride

Flex Ride driving system allows the driver to select between three driving modes:

- **SPORT** mode: press **SPORT**, LED illuminates.
- **TOUR** mode: press **TOUR**, LED illuminates.
- **NORMAL** mode: both **SPORT** and **TOUR** are not pressed, no LED illuminates.

Deactivate SPORT mode and TOUR mode by pressing the corresponding button once more.

In each driving mode, Flex Ride networks the following electronic systems:

- Continuous Damping Control
- Accelerator Pedal Control
- Steering Control
- Electronic Stability Control (ESC)
- Antilock brake system (ABS) with cornering brake control (CBC)
- Automatic transmission



### **SPORT mode**

The settings of the systems are adapted to a sportier driving style:

- Damping of shock absorbers reacts more stiffly to provide better contact with the road surface.
- The engine reacts more quickly to the accelerator pedal.
- Steering support is reduced.
- Shift points of automatic transmission occur later.
- With SPORT mode activated, the illumination of main instruments changes from white to red.

### **TOUR mode**

The settings of the systems are adapted to a comfort driving style:

- Damping of shock absorbers reacts more softly.
- Accelerator pedal reacts with standard settings.
- Steering support is in standard mode.

- Shift points of automatic transmission occur in a comfort mode.
- Illumination of main instruments is white.

### **NORMAL mode**

All settings of the systems are adapted to standard values.

### **Drive mode control**

Within each manual selected driving mode SPORT, TOUR or NORMAL, the Drive Mode Control (DMC) detects and analyses continuously the real driving characteristic, responses by the driver, and the active dynamic state of the vehicle. If necessary, the control unit of DMC automatically changes the settings within the selected driving mode or, when recognising greater variations, the driving mode is changed for the length of variation.

If, for example, NORMAL mode is selected and DMC detects a sporty driving behaviour, DMC changes several settings of the Normal mode

into sporty settings. The DMC changes to SPORT mode in case of very sporty driving behaviour.

If, for example, TOUR mode is selected and whilst driving on a winding road a sudden hard brake is necessary, DMC will detect the dynamic vehicle condition and changes the settings for suspension to SPORT mode to increase vehicle stability.

When the driving characteristic or the dynamic vehicle state returns to former state, DMC will change the settings to the preselected driving mode.

### Personalised settings in the Sport mode

The driver can select the functions of the SPORT mode when **SPORT** is pressed. These settings can be changed in the Settings menu in the Info-Display. Vehicle personalisation ↪ 130.

### Flex Ride - VXR Version

The VXR Version of Flex Ride system works in the same way as the standard Flex Ride system with the difference that the modes have a more sporty characteristic.



VXR Flex Ride driving system allows the driver to select between three driving modes:

- VXR mode: press **VXR**, LED illuminates.
- SPORT mode: press **SPORT**, LED illuminates.
- NORMAL mode: neither **SPORT** nor **VXR** is pressed, no LED illuminates.

Deactivate SPORT mode and VXR mode by pressing the corresponding button once more.

In each driving mode, VXR Flex Ride networks the following electronic systems:

- Continuous Damping Control
- Accelerator Pedal Control
- Steering Control
- Electronic Stability Control (ESC)
- Antilock brake system (ABS) with cornering brake control (CBC)

**NORMAL mode**

In NORMAL mode, when neither SPORT nor VXR is pressed, all settings of the systems are adapted to standard values.

**SPORT mode**

The settings of the systems are adapted to a sportier driving style.

**VXR mode**

The drive dynamic characteristics are adapted to high performance settings.

In this mode, the illumination of main instruments is switched to red.

**Personalised settings in the VXR mode**

The driver can select the functions of the VXR mode when **VXR** is pressed. These settings can be changed in the Settings menu in the Info-Display. Vehicle personalisation ↷ 130.

**Driver assistance systems****⚠ Warning**

Driver assistance systems are developed to support the driver and not to replace the driver's attention.

The driver accepts full responsibility when driving the vehicle.

When using driver assistance systems, always take care regarding the current traffic situation.

**Cruise control**

The Cruise control can store and maintain speeds of approx. 20 to 120 mph. Deviations from the stored speeds may occur when driving uphill or downhill.

For safety reasons, the cruise control cannot be activated until the foot brake has been operated once. Activating in first gear is not possible.



Do not use the cruise control if it is not advisable to maintain a constant speed.

With automatic transmission, only activate cruise control in automatic mode.


Control indicator ☞ ↷ 117.

**Switching on**

Press ☞; control indicator ☞ in instrument cluster illuminates white.

**Activation**

Accelerate to the desired speed and turn thumb wheel to **SET/-**; the current speed is stored and

maintained. Control indicator  in instrument cluster illuminates green. Accelerator pedal can be released.

Vehicle speed can be increased by depressing the accelerator pedal. When the accelerator pedal is released, the previously stored speed is resumed.

Cruise control remains activated while gearshifting.

### Increase speed

With cruise control active, hold thumb wheel turned to **RES/+** or briefly turn to **RES/+** repeatedly: speed increases continuously or in small increments.



Alternatively, accelerate to the desired speed and store by turning to **SET/-**.



### Reduce speed

With cruise control active, hold thumb wheel turned to **SET/-** or briefly turn to **SET/-** repeatedly: speed decreases continuously or in small increments.

### Deactivation

Press ; control indicator  in instrument cluster illuminates white. Cruise control is deactivated. Last stored speed remains in memory for later speed resume.



Automatic deactivation:


- Vehicle speed is below approx. 20 mph.
- Vehicle speed is above approx. 125 mph.
- The brake pedal is depressed.
- The clutch pedal is depressed for a few seconds.
- Selector lever is in **N**.
- Engine speed is in a very low range.
- The Traction Control system (TC) or Electronic Stability Control (ESC) is operating.

### Resume stored speed

Turn thumb wheel to **RES/+** at a speed above 20 mph. The stored speed will be obtained.

### Switching off

Press ; control indicator  in instrument cluster extinguishes. The stored speed is deleted.

Pressing  for activating speed limiter or switching off the ignition also switches off cruise control and deletes the stored speed.

## Speed limiter

The speed limiter prevents the vehicle exceeding a preset maximum speed.



The maximum speed can be set at a speed above 15 mph.

The driver can only accelerate up to the preset speed. Deviations from the limited speed may occur when driving downhill.

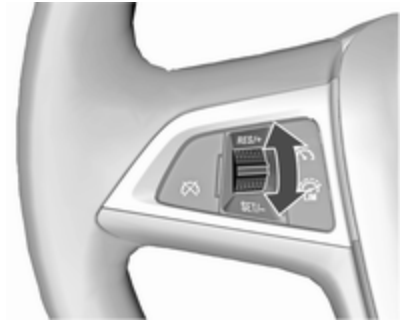
The preset speed limit is displayed in the top line of the Driver Information Centre (DIC) when the system is active.

## Activation



Press . If cruise control or adaptive cruise control has been activated before, it is switched off when speed limiter is activated and control indicator  extinguishes.

## Set speed limit



With speed limiter active, hold thumb wheel turned to **RES/+** or briefly turn to **RES/+** repeatedly until the desired maximum speed is displayed in the DIC.

Alternatively accelerate to the desired speed and briefly turn thumb wheel to **SET/-**: the current speed is stored as maximum speed. Speed limit is displayed in the DIC.



### Change speed limit

With speed limiter active, turn thumb wheel to **RES/+** to increase or **SET/-** to decrease the desired maximum speed.


### Exceeding the speed limit

In the event of an emergency, it is possible to exceed the speed limit by depressing the accelerator pedal firmly beyond the point of resistance.

The limited speed will flash in the DIC and (depending on vehicle) additionally a chime sounds during this period.

Release the accelerator pedal and the speed limiter function is reactivated once a speed lower than the limit speed is obtained.

### Deactivation


Press : speed limiter is deactivated and the vehicle can be driven without speed limit.


The limited speed is stored and a corresponding message appears in the DIC.

### Resume limit speed

Turn thumb wheel to **RES/+**. The stored speed limit will be obtained.

### Switching off

Press , the speed limit indication in the DIC extinguishes. The stored speed is deleted.

By pressing  to activate cruise control or adaptive cruise control or by switching off the ignition, speed limiter is also deactivated and the stored speed is deleted.

## Adaptive cruise control

Adaptive cruise control is an enhancement to traditional cruise control with the additional feature of maintaining a certain distance behind the vehicle ahead.

Adaptive cruise control automatically decelerates the vehicle when approaching a slower moving vehicle. It then adjusts the vehicle speed to follow the vehicle ahead at the selected following distance. The vehicle speed increases or decreases to follow the vehicle in front, but will not exceed the set speed. It may apply limited braking with activated brake lights.

The adaptive cruise control can store and maintain speeds over approx. 31 mph and brakes automatically to follow a slower vehicle driving ahead to a minimum speed of 18 mph.





Adaptive cruise control uses a radar sensor to detect the vehicles ahead. If no vehicle is detected in the driving path, the adaptive cruise control will behave like a traditional cruise control.

For safety reasons, the system cannot be activated before the brake pedal has been depressed once since switching on ignition. Activation in first gear is not possible.

Adaptive cruise control is mainly advised to be used on long straight roads, e.g. highways or country roads with steady traffic. Do not use the system if it is not advisable to maintain a constant speed.



Control indicator  118,  117.

### Warning

The complete driver attention is always required while driving with adaptive cruise control. The driver stays fully in control of the vehicle because the brake pedal, the accelerator pedal and the cancel switch have priority over any adaptive cruise control operation.


### Switching on












Press  to switch on adaptive cruise control. The control indicator  illuminates white.

### Activation by setting the speed

Adaptive cruise control can be activated between 31 mph and 112 mph.

Accelerate to the desired speed and turn thumb wheel to **SET/-**, the current speed is stored and maintained. Control indicator  illuminates green.

		55 mls/h
		1854.2 mls
		18.5 miles/gal
		61.5 mls/h
		10253

The adaptive cruise control symbol, the following distance setting and set speed are indicated in the top line of the Driver Information Centre (DIC).

The accelerator pedal can be released. Adaptive cruise control remains activated while gearshifting.

### Overriding set speed

It is always possible to drive faster than the selected set speed by depressing the accelerator pedal. When the accelerator pedal is released, the vehicle returns to the desired distance if a slower vehicle is ahead. Otherwise it returns to the stored speed.

Once the system is activated, adaptive cruise control decelerates or brakes if it detects a vehicle ahead, which is slower or closer than the desired following distance.

### ⚠ Warning

Accelerating by the driver deactivates automatic braking by the system. This is indicated as a pop-up warning in the Driver Information Centre (DIC).

### Increase speed

With adaptive cruise control active, hold thumb wheel turned to **RES/+**: speed increases continuously in large increments, or activate repeatedly **RES/+**: speed increases in small increments.

If the vehicle is driven with adaptive cruise control active much faster than the desired speed, e.g. after depressing the accelerator pedal, then the current speed can be stored and maintained by turning the thumb wheel to **SET/-**.

### Reduce speed

With adaptive cruise control active, hold thumb wheel turned to **SET/-**: speed decreases continuously in large increments, or activate repeatedly **SET/-**: speed decreases in small increments.

If the vehicle is driven with adaptive cruise control active much slower than the desired speed, e.g. because of a slower vehicle ahead, then the current speed can be stored and maintained by turning the thumb wheel to **SET/-**.

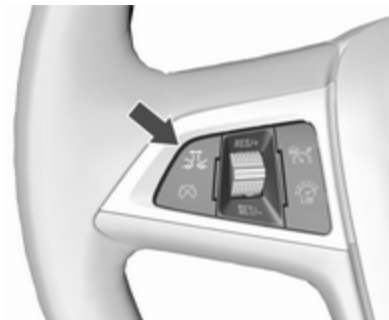
### Resume stored speed

If the system is switched on but inactive, then turn thumb wheel to **RES/+** at a speed above 31 mph to resume the stored speed.

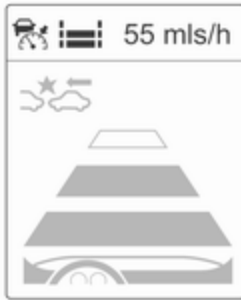
### Setting the following distance

When adaptive cruise control detects a slower moving vehicle in the driving path, it will adjust the vehicle speed to maintain the following distance selected by the driver.

The following distance can be set to near, medium or far.



Press **SET/-**; the current setting is shown in the DIC. Press **SET/-** again to change the following distance. The setting is also displayed in the top line of the DIC.



The selected following distance is indicated by filled distance bars in the adaptive cruise control page.

Note that the following distance setting is shared with the sensitivity setting of forward collision alert.


Example: If setting 3 (far) is selected, then the driver is warned sooner before a possible collision, also if adaptive cruise control is inactive or switched off.

### Warning

The driver accepts full responsibility for the appropriate following distance based on traffic, weather and visibility conditions. Following distance must be adjusted or the system switched off when required by the prevailing conditions.

### Detecting the vehicle ahead




The green illuminated vehicle ahead control indicator  is displayed in the speedometer when the system detects a vehicle in the driving path.

If this symbol does not display, or displays briefly, adaptive cruise control will not respond to vehicles ahead.

### Deactivation


Adaptive cruise control is deactivated by the driver when:

-  is pressed.
- The brake pedal is depressed.
- The clutch pedal is depressed for more than four seconds.
- The gear selector lever of automatic transmission is moved to N.

The system is also automatically deactivated when:

- Vehicle speed slows down below 28 mph or accelerates above 120 mph.
- The Traction Control system (TC) is operating for more than 20 seconds.
- The Electronic Stability Control (ESC) is operating.

- There is no traffic and nothing detected on the road sides for several minutes. In this case, there are no radar echoes and the sensor may report that it is blocked.
- The collision imminent braking system is applying the brakes.
- The radar sensor is blocked by an ice or water film.
- A fault is detected in the radar, engine or brake system.

When adaptive cruise control is deactivated automatically, the control indicator  illuminates white and a warning symbol is displayed as a pop-up in the DIC.





The stored speed is maintained.

### Warning

When adaptive cruise control is deactivated, the driver must take over full brake and engine control.

### Switching off

Press  to switch off adaptive cruise control. The control indicator  extinguishes. The stored speed is deleted.

Switching off the ignition also switches off adaptive cruise control and deletes the stored speed.

### Driver's attention

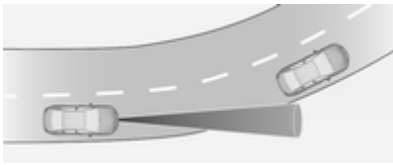
- Use adaptive cruise control carefully on bends or mountain roads, as it can lose the vehicle ahead and need time to detect it again.
- Do not use the system on slippery roads as it can create rapid changes in tyre traction (wheel spinning), so that you could lose control.
- Do not use adaptive cruise control during rain, snow or heavy dirt, as the radar sensor can be covered by a water film, dust, ice or snow. This reduces or suppresses completely the visibility. In case of sensor blockage, clean the sensor cover.

### System limits


- The system's automatic brake force does not permit hard braking and the braking level may not be sufficient to avoid a collision.

- After a sudden lane change, the system needs a certain time to detect the next preceding vehicle. So if a new vehicle is detected, the system may accelerate instead of braking.
- Adaptive cruise control does ignore the oncoming traffic.
- Adaptive cruise control does not brake for stopped vehicles, pedestrians or animals.

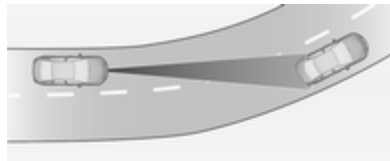
### Bends



The adaptive cruise control calculates a predicted path based on the centrifugal force. This predicted path considers the current bend characteristic, but cannot consider a future bend change. The system may lose the current vehicle ahead or consider a vehicle which is not in the actual lane. This can happen when

entering or exiting a bend or if the bend gets stronger or weaker. If it no longer detects any vehicle ahead, then control indicator  will extinguish.

If the centrifugal force is too high in a bend, the system slows down the vehicle slightly. This braking level is not designed to avoid spinning off the bend. The driver is responsible for reducing the selected speed before entering a bend and in general to adapt the speed to the road type and to existing speed limits.



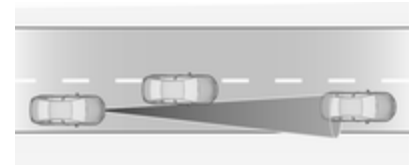
### Motorways

On motorways, adapt the set speed to the situation and the weather. Always consider that adaptive cruise control has a limited visibility range, a limited braking level and a certain reaction time to verify if a vehicle is on the driving path or not. Adaptive

cruise control may not be able to brake the vehicle in time to avoid a collision with a much slower vehicle or after a lane change. This is particularly true if driving fast or if the visibility is reduced due to weather conditions.

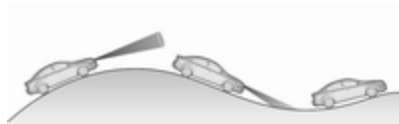
While entering or exiting a motorway, adaptive cruise control may lose the vehicle ahead and accelerate up to the set speed. For this reason, decrease the set speed before the exit or before the entry.

### Vehicle path changes



If another vehicle enters your driving path, adaptive cruise control will first consider the vehicle when it is completely in your path. Be ready to take action and depress the brake pedal, if you need to brake more quickly.

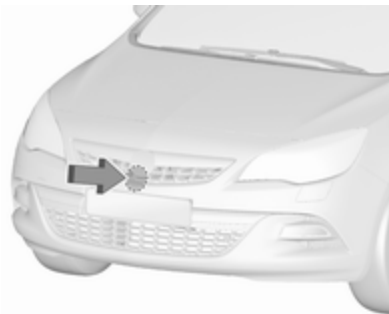
### Hill and trailer considerations



System performance on hills and when towing a trailer depends on your vehicle speed, vehicle load, traffic conditions and the road gradient. It may not detect a vehicle in your path while driving on hills. On steep hills, you may have to use the accelerator pedal to maintain your vehicle speed. When going downhill, especially when towing a trailer, you may have to brake to maintain or reduce your speed.

Note that applying the brake deactivates the system. It is not recommended to use adaptive cruise control on steep hills especially when towing a trailer.

### Radar unit



The radar unit is mounted behind the radiator grille below the brand emblem.

#### Warning

The radar unit was aligned carefully during manufacture. Therefore, after a frontal accident, do not use the system. The front bumper may appear to be intact, however the sensor behind can be out of position and react incorrectly. After an accident,

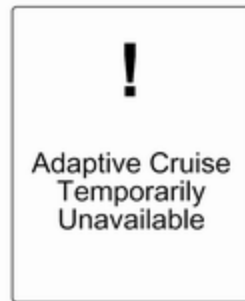
consult a workshop to verify and correct the adaptive cruise control sensor position.

### Settings

Settings can be changed in the **Auto collision preparation** menu in the vehicle personalisation, ⇨ 130.

### Fault

If the adaptive cruise control does not work due to temporary conditions (e.g. blockage by ice) or if there is a permanent system error, then a message is displayed in the DIC.




Vehicle messages ⇨ 124.

## Forward collision alert


The forward collision alert can help to avoid or reduce the harm caused by front-end crashes.



A vehicle ahead is indicated by a control indicator .



If a vehicle directly ahead is approached too quickly, a warning chime and alert in the Driver Information Centre (DIC) is provided.

A precondition is that forward collision alert is activated in the vehicle personalisation menu ⇨ 130 or that it is not deactivated by pressing  (depending on the system, see following).

Depending on the vehicle's equipment, there are two variants of the forward collision alert available:

- **Forward collision alert based on radar system**

on vehicles equipped with adaptive cruise control ⇨ 186.

- **Forward collision alert based on front camera system**

on vehicles with traditional cruise control or none ⇨ 183.

## Forward collision alert based on radar system

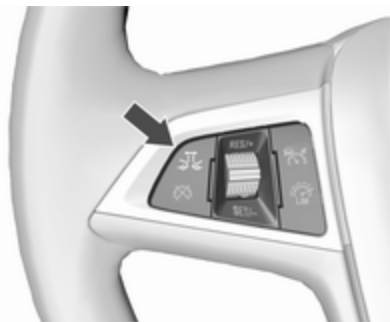
The system uses the radar sensor behind the radiator grille to detect a vehicle directly ahead, in your path, within a maximum distance of 150 metres.

### Activation

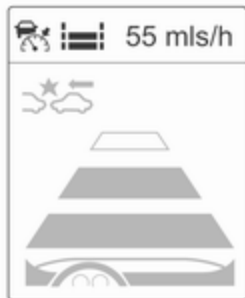
Forward collision alert operates automatically above walking speed, provided that **Auto collision preparation** setting is not deactivated in the vehicle personalisation menu ⇨ 130.

### Selecting the alert sensitivity

The alert sensitivity can be set to near, medium or far.



Press ; the current setting is shown in the DIC. Press again to change the alert sensitivity. The setting is also displayed in the top line of the DIC.



Note that the alert timing sensitivity setting is shared with the following distance setting of the adaptive cruise control. So changing the alert timing sensitivity changes the adaptive cruise control following distance setting.

### Alerting the driver



A green illuminated vehicle ahead control indicator illuminates in the instrument cluster when the system has detected a vehicle in the driving path. When the distance to a preceding moving vehicle gets too small or when approaching another vehicle too rapidly and a collision is

imminent, the collision alert symbol pops-up in the DIC. Simultaneously a warning chime sounds.

Depress the brake pedal, if it is required by the situation.

### Settings

Settings can be changed in the **Auto collision preparation** menu in the vehicle personalisation 130.

### Forward collision alert based on front camera system

Forward collision alert uses the front camera system in the windscreen to detect a vehicle directly ahead, in your path, within a distance of approx. 60 metres.

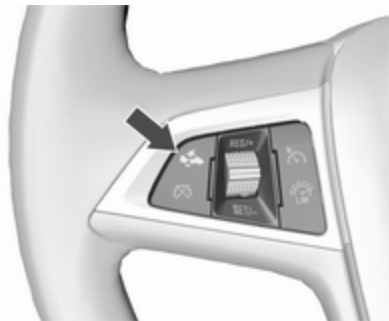
### Activation

Forward collision alert operates automatically above 25 mph, if it is not deactivated by pressing , see below.

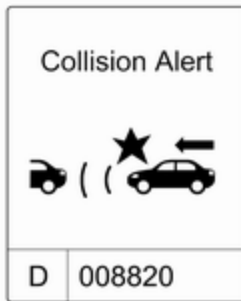
### Selecting the alert sensitivity

The alert sensitivity can be set to near, medium or far.





Press ; the current setting is shown in the DIC. Press again to change the alert sensitivity.



### Alerting the driver

A green illuminated vehicle ahead control indicator illuminates in the instrument cluster when the system has detected a vehicle in the driving path.

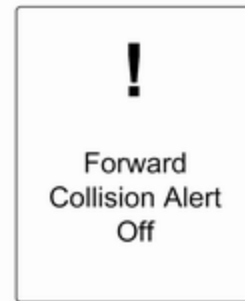


When the distance to a preceding moving vehicle gets too small or when approaching another vehicle too rapidly and a collision is imminent, the collision alert symbol pops-up in the DIC.

Simultaneously a warning chime sounds. Depress the brake pedal, if it is required by the situation.

### Deactivation

The system can be deactivated. Press repeatedly until the following message appears in the DIC.



### General information for both variants of forward collision alert

#### Warning

Forward collision alert is just a warning system and does not apply the brakes. When

approaching a vehicle ahead too rapidly, it may not provide you enough time to avoid a collision.

The driver accepts full responsibility for the appropriate following distance based on traffic, weather and visibility conditions.

The complete attention of the driver is always required while driving. The driver must always be ready to take action and apply the brakes.

### System limitations


The system is designed to warn only for vehicles, but may react also to other metallic objects.

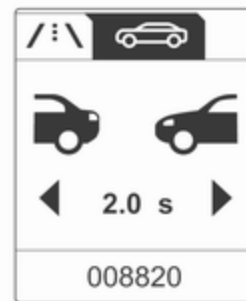
In the following cases, forward collision alert may not detect a vehicle ahead or sensor performance is limited:

- on winding roads
- when weather limits visibility, e.g. fog, rain, or snow
- when the sensor is blocked by snow, ice, slush, mud, dirt, or windscreen damage

## Following distance indication

The following distance indication displays the distance to a preceding moving vehicle. The system uses, depending on the vehicle equipment, either the radar behind the radiator grille or the front camera in the windscreen to detect the distance of a vehicle directly ahead in your lane. It is active at speeds above 25 mph.

When a preceding vehicle is detected ahead, the distance is indicated in seconds, displayed on a page in the Driver Information Centre (DIC) ↗ 118. Press **MENU** on the turn signal lever to select **Vehicle Information Menu**  and turn the adjuster wheel to choose following distance indication page.



The minimum indicated distance is 0.5 s.

If there is no vehicle ahead or the vehicle ahead is out of range, two dashes will be displayed: -- s.

## Active Emergency Braking

Active emergency braking can help to reduce the damage from crashes with vehicles and obstacles directly ahead, when a collision can no longer be avoided either by manual braking or by steering. Before the active emergency braking applies, the driver is warned by the forward collision alert ↗ 193.

The feature uses various inputs (e.g. radar sensor, brake pressure, vehicle speed) to calculate the probability of a frontal collision.

Active emergency braking operates automatically above walking speed, provided that **Auto collision preparation** setting is not deactivated in the vehicle personalisation menu ⇨ 130.

The system includes:

- **brake preparation system**
- **emergency automatic braking**
- **forward looking brake assist**

### Warning

This system is not intended to replace the driver responsibility of driving the vehicle and looking ahead. Its function is limited to supplemental use only. The driver shall continue to apply the brake pedal as the driving situation dictates.

## Brake preparation system

When approaching a vehicle ahead so quickly that a collision is likely, the brake preparation system slightly pressurises the brakes. This reduces the response time, when a manual or automatic braking is requested.

The brake system is prepared so that braking can occur more rapidly.

## Emergency automatic braking

After the brake preparation and just before the imminent collision, this function automatically applies limited braking to reduce the impact speed of the collision.

## Forward looking brake assist

In addition to brake preparation system and emergency automatic braking, the forward looking brake assist function makes the brake assist more sensitive. In this way, depressing the brake pedal slightly results immediately in a strong braking. This function helps the driver brake quicker and stronger before the imminent collision.

### Warning

Active emergency braking is not designed to apply strong autonomous braking or to avoid automatically a collision. It is designed to reduce the vehicle speed before collision. It may not react on stopped vehicles, pedestrians or animals. After a sudden lane change, the system needs a certain time to detect the next preceding vehicle.

The complete attention of the driver is always required while driving. The driver shall always be ready to take action and apply the brakes and steer to avoid collisions. The system is designed to work with all occupants wearing their seat belts.

## System limitations

The active emergency braking has limited or no function during rain, snow or heavy dirt, as the radar sensor can be covered by a water

film, dust, ice or snow. In case of sensor blockage, clean the sensor cover.

In some seldom cases the active emergency braking system may provide a short automatic braking in situations that seem to be unnecessary, for instance due to traffic signs in a curve or due to vehicles in another lane. This is acceptable operation, the vehicle does not need service. Firmly apply the accelerator pedal to override the automatic braking.

### Settings

Settings can be changed in the **Auto collision preparation** menu in the vehicle personalisation, ↻ 130.

### Fault

In the event of a system service requirement, a message is displayed in the Driver Information Centre (DIC).



If the system does not work as it should do, vehicle messages are displayed in the DIC.

Vehicle messages ↻ 124.

## Parking assist

### Rear parking assist

#### ⚠ Warning

The driver bears full responsibility for the parking manoeuvre.

Always check the surrounding area while reversing and using the rear parking assist system.


The rear parking assist makes parking easier by measuring the distance between the vehicle and rear obstacles. It informs and warns the driver by giving acoustic signals.



The system has four ultrasonic parking sensors in the rear bumper.

### Activation

When reverse gear is engaged, the system is ready to operate automatically.

An illuminated LED in the parking assist button **P**  indicates that the system is ready to operate.

### Indication

The system warns the driver with acoustic signals against potentially hazardous obstacles behind the vehicle. The interval between the sounds becomes shorter as the vehicle gets closer to that obstacle. When the distance is less than approx. 30 cm, the sound is continuous.

Additionally, the distance to obstacles may be shown in the Driver Information Centre (DIC).

### Deactivation



The system automatically switches off when reverse gear is disengaged.

To switch on the system again, engage reverse gear.

Manual deactivation is also possible by pressing **P** with a triangle symbol.

When the system is deactivated, the LED in the button extinguishes.

Additionally, **Park Assist Off** pops-up in the DIC when the system is deactivated manually.

### Fault

In the event of a fault in the system or if the system does not work due to temporary conditions, e.g. ice covered sensors, control indicator **P** with a triangle symbol illuminates or a message is displayed in the DIC.

Vehicle messages ⇨ 124.

Control indicator **P** with a triangle symbol ⇨ 115.

### Front-rear parking assist

#### ⚠ Warning

The driver bears full responsibility for the parking manoeuvre.

Always check the surrounding area when driving backwards or forwards while using parking assist system.

The front-rear parking assist measures the distance between the vehicle and obstacles in front and behind the vehicle. The system gives acoustic signals and display messages.

The system has four ultrasonic parking sensors each in the rear and front bumper.

It uses two different acoustic warning signals for the front and rear monitoring areas, each with a different tone frequency. The signal for front obstacles sounds via the front speakers, for rear obstacles it sounds from the rear speakers.

### Parking assist button and operation logic



Front-rear parking assist is equipped with **P**▲. If the vehicle is additionally equipped with advanced parking assist (see the following separate description) the system is equipped with **P**▣. Both systems will be operated by **P**▣▲.

Short press of **P**▲ or **P**▣▲ deactivates or activates the front parking assist.

Long press of **P**▣▲ (approx. one second) activates or deactivates the advanced parking assist.

Button logic to operate the systems is as follows:

- Front-rear parking assist is active: short press deactivates front-rear parking assist.
- Front-rear parking assist is active: long press activates advanced parking assist if a forward gear is engaged.
- Advanced parking assist is active: short press activates front-rear parking assist.
- Advanced parking assist is active: long press deactivates advanced parking assist.
- Advanced parking assist and front-rear parking assist are active: short press deactivates both systems.

#### Activation

When reverse gear is engaged, the front and rear parking assist is ready to operate.

The front parking assist is also activated automatically at a speed up to 7 mph.

An illuminated LED in the parking assist button **P**▲ or **P**▣▲ indicates that the system is ready to operate.

If the vehicle exceeds a speed of 7 mph, the front parking assist is deactivated. The front parking assist is always reactivated when vehicle speed drops below 7 mph.

#### Indication

The system warns the driver with acoustic signals against potentially hazardous obstacles behind and in front of the vehicle. Depending on which side of the vehicle is closer to an obstacle, you will hear acoustic warning signals on the respective side of the vehicle. The interval between the sounds becomes shorter as the vehicle gets closer to that obstacle. When the distance is less than approx. 30 cm, the sound is continuous.

Additionally, the distance to obstacles may be shown in the DIC ↻ 118.



The distance to a front and rear obstacle is indicated by changing distance lines around the vehicle.

Rear obstacles are indicated acoustically and visually at the same time.

Front obstacles are indicated visually first. At distances less than 80 cm an acoustic signal also sounds.

The distance indication in the DIC can be inhibited by vehicle messages with a higher priority. After approving the message by pressing **SET/CLR** on the turn signal lever, distance indication appears again.

### Deactivation

The rear parking assist automatically switches off when reverse gear is disengaged.

The front parking assist is deactivated automatically at a speed above 7 mph.



Manual deactivation is possible by pressing **P+PA** or **P+PA** briefly.

When the system is deactivated, the LED in the button extinguishes.

Additionally, **Park Assist Off** pops-up in the DIC when the system is deactivated manually.

After a manual deactivation, the front parking assist is activated again if **P+PA** or **P+PA** is pressed or if reverse gear is engaged.

### Fault

In the event of a fault in the system or if the system does not work due to temporary conditions, e.g. ice covered sensors, control indicator **P+PA** illuminates or a message is displayed in the DIC.

Vehicle messages ⇨ 124.

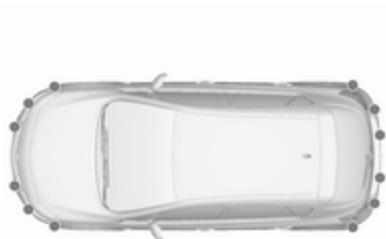
Control indicator **P+PA** ⇨ 115.

### Advanced parking assist

#### ⚠ Warning

The driver bears full responsibility for accepting the parking slot suggested by the system and the parking manoeuvre.


Always check the surrounding area in all directions when using advanced parking assist.





The advanced parking assist system manoeuvres the driver into a parking slot by giving instructions in the DIC and via acoustic signals. The driver must control acceleration, braking, steering and gearshifting.

The system uses the sensors of the front-rear parking assist in combination with two additional sensors on both sides of the front and rear bumper.

#### Button and operation logic

Advanced parking assist and front-rear parking assist (see previous description) are both operated by pressing .

Short press of  deactivates or activates the front parking assist.


Long press of  (approx. one second) activates or deactivates the advanced parking assist.

Button logic to operate the systems is as follows:

- Front-rear parking assist is active: short press deactivates front-rear parking assist.
- Front-rear parking assist is active: long press activates advanced parking assist if a forward gear is engaged.
- Advanced parking assist is active: short press activates front-rear parking assist.
- Advanced parking assist is active: long press deactivates advanced parking assist.
- Advanced parking assist and front-rear parking assist are active: short press deactivates both systems.

#### Activation



When searching for a parking slot, the system must be activated by pressing  for approx. one second.

The system can only be activated and can only search for a parking slot at a speed up to 18 mph.

The maximum allowed parallel distance between the vehicle and a row of parked cars is 1.8 metres.

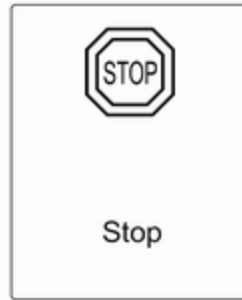


## Functionality



When the vehicle passes a row of cars and the system is activated, the advanced parking assist system begins searching for a suitable parking slot. When a suitable slot is detected, visual feedback in the Driver Information Centre and an acoustic signal are given.

If the driver does not stop the vehicle within 10 metres after a parking slot is proposed, the system starts to search for another suitable parking slot.



The parking slot suggestion of the system is accepted when the vehicle is stopped by the driver within 10 metres after the "Stop" message is given. The system calculates the optimal route into the parking slot. Then it manoeuvres the driver into the slot by giving detailed instructions.



The instructions in the display show:

- A hint when driving faster than 18 mph.
- The demand to stop the vehicle, when a parking slot is detected.
- The direction of driving during the parking manoeuvre.
- The steering wheel position during parking.
- For some of the instructions a progress bar is shown.



A successful parking manoeuvre is indicated by the 'End position' symbol.

Always pay attention to the sound of the front-rear parking assist. Continuous sound means that the distance to an obstacle is less than approx. 30 cm.

### Changing the parking side

The system is configured to detect parking slots by default on the passenger side. To detect parking slots on the driver side, switch on turn indicator to the driver side for the duration of searching.



As soon as turn indicator is switched off, the system searches for parking slots on the passenger side again.

### Display priorities

After activating the advanced parking assist, a message appears in the DIC. Advanced parking assist indication in the DIC can be inhibited by vehicle messages with a higher priority. After approving the message by pressing **SET/CLR** on the turn signal lever, advanced parking assist instructions appear again and the parking manoeuvre can be continued.

### Deactivation

The system is deactivated by:


- short press of  if advanced parking assist and front-rear parking assist are activated
- long press of  if advanced parking assist is activated
- successfully ending parking manoeuvre
- driving faster than 18 mph
- switching off the ignition

Deactivation by the driver or by the system during manoeuvring will be indicated by **Parking Deactivated** in the DIC.

### Fault

A message appears in the DIC when:

- There is a fault in the system.
- The driver did not successfully complete the parking manoeuvre.
- The system is not operational.

If an object is detected during parking instructions, **Stop** is indicated in the DIC. Removing the object will resume the parking manoeuvre. If the object is not removed, the system will be deactivated. Press  for approx. one second to activate the system and search for a new parking slot.

## Basic notes on parking assist systems

### Warning

Under certain circumstances, various reflective surfaces on objects or clothing as well as external noise sources may cause the system to fail to detect obstacles.

Special attention must be paid to low obstacles which can damage the lower part of the bumper.

### Caution

Performance of the system can be reduced when sensors are covered, e.g. by ice or snow.

Performance of the parking assist system can be reduced due to heavy loading.

Special conditions apply if there are taller vehicles in the vicinity (e.g. off-road vehicles, mini vans, vans). Object identification and

correct distance indication in the upper part of these vehicles cannot be guaranteed.

Objects with a very small reflection cross-section, e.g. objects of narrow size or soft materials, may not be detected by the system.

Parking assist systems do not detect objects outside the detection range.

### Notice

The parking assist system can be activated and deactivated by changing the settings in the Info-Display. If a trailer coupling is attached, it must be selected in the menu.

Vehicle personalisation ⇨ 130.

### Notice



The parking assist system automatically detects factory-fitted towing equipment. It is deactivated when the connector is plugged in.

It is possible that the sensor detects a non-existing object (echo disturbance) caused by external acoustical or mechanic disturbances.

Advanced parking assist system may not respond to changes in the parking space after initiating a parallel parking manoeuvre.

### Notice

If engaging a forward gear and exceeding a certain speed, the rear parking assist will be deactivated when the rear carrier system is extended.

If engaging reverse at first, the parking assist will detect the rear carrier system and provide a buzzing sound. Press **P** or **SP** briefly to deactivate the parking assist.

### Notice

After use the advanced parking assist requires a calibration. For optimal parking guidance, a driving distance of at least 22 miles, including a number of bends, is required.

## Side blind spot alert

The Side blind spot alert system detects and reports objects on either side of the vehicle, within a specified "blind spot" zone. The system alerts visually in each exterior mirror, when detecting objects that may not be visible in the interior and exterior mirrors.

The system's sensors are located in the bumper on the left and right side of the vehicle.



### ⚠ Warning

Side blind spot alert does not replace driver vision.


The system does not detect:

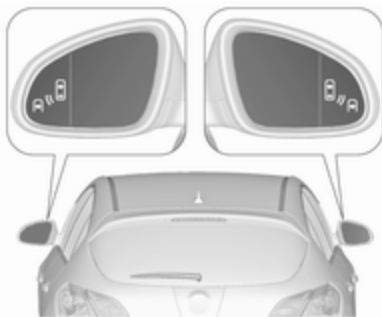
- vehicles outside the side blind zones which may be rapidly approaching
- pedestrians, cyclists or animals



Before changing a lane, always check all mirrors, look over the shoulder and use the turn signal.

When the system detects a vehicle in the side blind zone while driving forward, either while passing a vehicle or being passed, an amber warning symbol  will illuminate in the relevant exterior mirror. If the driver then activates the turn signal, the warning symbol  starts flashing amber as a warning not to change lanes.

### Notice

If the passing vehicle is at least 6 mph faster than the passed vehicle, the warning symbol  in the relevant exterior mirror will not illuminate.



Side blind spot alert is active from speeds of 6 mph up to 87 mph. Driving faster than 87 mph deactivates the system, indicated by low lighting warning symbols  in both exterior mirrors. Reducing the speed again will extinguish the warning symbols. If a vehicle is then detected in the blind zone, the warning symbols  will illuminate as normal on the relevant side.

When the vehicle is started, both exterior mirror displays will briefly come on to indicate that the system is operating.

The system can be activated or deactivated in the menu **Settings** in the Info-Display, vehicle personalisation ↻ 130.

Deactivation is indicated by a message in the Driver Information Centre (DIC).

### Detection zones

The system sensor covers a zone of approx. 3 metres on both sides of the vehicle. This zone starts at each exterior mirror and extends rearwards

by approx. 3 metres. The height of the zone is approx. between 0.5 metres and 2 metres off the ground.

The system is deactivated if the vehicle is towing a trailer.

Side blind spot alert is designed to ignore stationary objects such as guardrails, posts, curbs, walls and beams. Parked vehicles or oncoming vehicles are not detected.

## Fault

Occasional missed alerts can occur under normal circumstances.

Side blind spot alert does not operate when the left or right corners of the rear bumper are covered with mud, dirt, snow, ice or slush. Cleaning instructions ↷ 282.

In the event of a fault in the system or if the system does not work due to temporary conditions, a message is displayed in the DIC. Seek the assistance of a workshop in case of a permanent fault.

## Rear view camera

The rear view camera assists the driver when reversing by displaying a view of the area behind the vehicle.

The view of the camera is displayed in the Colour-Info-Display.

### ⚠ Warning

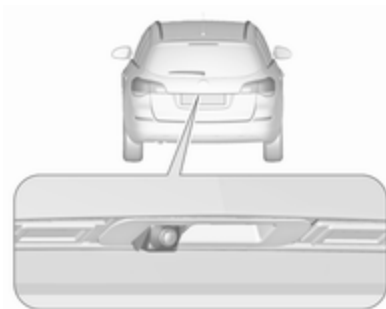
The rear view camera does not replace driver vision. Note that objects that are outside the camera's field of view and the advanced parking assist sensors, e.g. below the bumper or underneath the vehicle, are not displayed.

Do not reverse the vehicle by only looking at the Info-Display and check the surrounding area behind and around the vehicle before reversing.

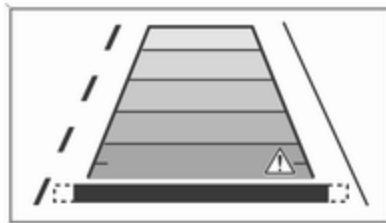
## Activation

Rear view camera is automatically activated when reverse gear is engaged.

## Functionality



The camera is mounted in the tailgate handle and has a viewing angle of 130°.

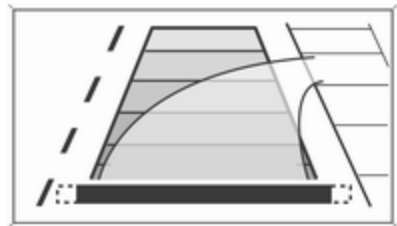


Due to the high position of the camera the rear bumper can be seen on the display as a guide to position.

The area displayed by the camera is limited. The distance of the image that appears on the display differs from the actual distance.

### Guiding lines

Dynamic guiding lines are horizontal lines in 1 metre intervals projected on the picture to define the distance to shown objects.



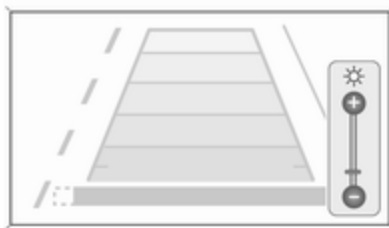
Trajectory lane of the vehicle is shown in accordance with the steering angle.

The function can be deactivated in the Settings menu in the Info-Display. Vehicle personalisation ⇨ 130.

### Warning symbols

Warning symbols are indicated as triangles  $\triangle$  on the picture which show obstacles detected by the rear sensors of the advanced parking assist.

### Display settings



**Navi 650/Navi 950:** Brightness can be set by first pressing and then turning the outer ring of the multifunction knob.

**CD 600:** Brightness can be set by first pressing and then turning the multifunction knob.

### Deactivation

The camera is deactivated when a certain forward speed is exceeded or if reverse gear is not engaged for approx. 10 seconds.

Activation or deactivation of the rear view camera can be changed in the Settings menu in the Info-Display. Vehicle personalisation ⇨ 130.

### Fault

Fault messages are displayed with a  $\triangle$  on the top line of the Info-Display.

The rear view camera may not operate properly when:

- The surrounding is dark.
- The sun or the beam of headlights is shining directly into the camera lens.
- Ice, snow, mud, or anything else covers the camera lens. Clean the lens, rinse it with water, and wipe it with a soft cloth.

- The tailgate is not closed correctly.
- The vehicle had a rear end accident.
- There are extreme temperature changes.

## Traffic sign assistant

### Functionality

The traffic sign assistant system detects designated traffic signs via a front camera and displays them in the Driver Information Centre (DIC).



Traffic signs which will be detected are:

### Limit and no passing signs

- speed limit
- no passing
- end of speed limit
- end of no passing

### Road signs

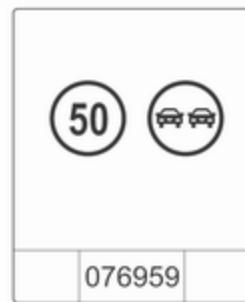
Beginning and end of:

- motorways
- A-roads
- play streets

### Add-on signs

- additional hints to traffic signs
- restriction of trailer towing
- tractor constraints
- wet warning
- ice warning
- direction arrows

Speed limit signs are displayed in the DIC until the next speed limit sign or end of speed limit is detected or up to a defined sign timeout.



Indication of multiple signs on the display is possible.



An exclamation mark in a frame indicates that there is an add-on sign detected which cannot be recognised by the system.



The system is active up to a speed of 124 mph depending on the lighting conditions. At night the system is active up to a speed of 99 mph.

As soon as vehicle speed becomes slower than 34 mph the display will be reset and the content of the traffic sign page will be cleared. The next recognized speed indication will be displayed.

### Display indication

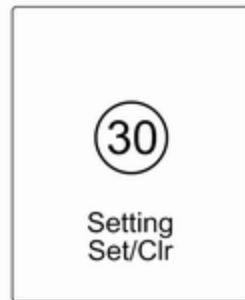
Traffic signs are displayed on the **Traffic sign detection** page in the DIC.



Select **Settings**  by pressing **MENU** and select **Traffic sign detection** via the adjuster wheel on the turn signal lever  118.

When another page on the Driver Information Centre menu was selected and then **Traffic sign detection** page is chosen again, the last recognized traffic sign will be displayed.

### Alert function

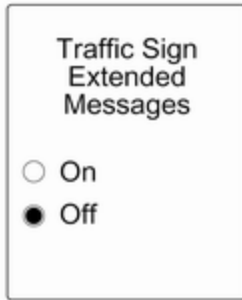


Once activated, speed limit and no passing signs are displayed as pop-up alerts in the DIC.





The alert function can be activated or deactivated in the Settings menu of the traffic sign assistant page by pressing **SET/CLR** on the turn signal lever.



When the Settings page is displayed, select **Off** to deactivate alert function. Reactivate by selecting **On**.

When switching on the ignition, alert function is deactivated.

Pop-up indication is displayed for approx. 8 seconds in the Driver Information Centre.

### System reset

The content of the traffic sign memory can be cleared in the Settings menu of the traffic sign assistant page by pressing and holding **SET/CLR** on the turn signal lever. Upon successful reset, a chime will sound and the following symbol is indicated until the next traffic sign is detected.



In some cases, traffic sign assistant is reset automatically by the system.

### Fault

The traffic sign assistant system may not operate correctly when:

- The area of the windscreen, where the front camera is located, is not clean.
- Traffic signs are completely or partially covered or difficult to discern.
- There are adverse environmental conditions, e.g. heavy rain, snow, direct sunlight or shadows. In this case **No Traffic Sign Detection due to Weather** is indicated in the Driver Information Centre.
- Traffic signs are incorrectly mounted or damaged.
- Traffic signs do not comply with the Vienna Convention on traffic signs (Wiener Übereinkommen über Straßenverkehrszeichen).

#### Caution

The system is intended to help the driver within a defined speed range to discern certain traffic

signs. Do not ignore traffic signs which are not displayed by the system.

The system does not discern any other than the conventional traffic signs that might give or end a speed limit.

Do not let this special feature tempt you into taking risks when driving.

Always adapt speed to the road conditions.

The driver assistance systems do not relieve the driver from full responsibility for vehicle operation.

### Lane departure warning

The lane departure warning system observes the lane markings between which the vehicle is driving via a front camera. The system detects lane changes and warns the driver in the event of an unintended lane change via visual and acoustic signals.


Criteria for the detection of an unintended lane change are:


- No operation of turn signals.
- No brake pedal operation.
- No active accelerator operation or speeding-up.
- No active steering.

If the driver is active, no warning will be issued.


### Activation



The lane departure warning system is activated by pressing . The illuminated LED in the button indicates that the system is switched


on. When control indicator  in the instrument cluster illuminates green, the system is ready to operate.

The system is only operable at vehicle speeds above 35 mph and if lane markings are available.

When the system recognises an unintended lane change, the control indicator  changes to yellow and flashes. Simultaneously a chime sound is activated.



### Deactivation

The system is deactivated by pressing , the LED in the button extinguishes.

At speeds below 35 mph the system is inoperable.

## Fault

The lane departure warning system may not operate properly when:

- The windscreen is not clean.
- There are adverse environmental conditions like heavy rain, snow, direct sunlight or shadows.

The system can not operate when no lane marking is detected.

## Fuel

### Fuel for petrol engines

Only use unleaded fuel that complies with European standard EN 228 or E DIN 51626-1 or equivalent.

The engine is capable of running with fuel that contains up to 10% ethanol (e.g. named E10).

Use fuel with the recommended octane rating ⇨ 293.

#### Caution

Do not use fuel or fuel additives that contain metallic compounds such as manganese-based additives. This may cause engine damage.

#### Caution

Use of fuel that does not comply to EN 228 or E DIN 51626-1 or equivalent can lead to deposits or engine damage and may affect your warranty.

#### Caution

Use of fuel with too low an octane rating could lead to uncontrolled combustion and engine damage.

### Fuel for diesel engines

Only use diesel fuel that complies with EN 590.

In countries outside the European Union use Euro-Diesel fuel with a sulphur concentration below 50 ppm.

#### Caution

Use of fuel that does not comply to EN 590 or similar can lead to engine powerloss, increased wear or engine damage and may affect your warranty.

Do not use marine diesel oils, heating oils, Aquazole and similar diesel-water emulsions. Diesel fuels must not be diluted with fuels for petrol engines.

## Fuel for liquid gas operation

Liquid gas is known as LPG (Liquefied Petroleum Gas) or under its French name GPL (Gaz de Pétrole Liquéfié). LPG is also known as Autogas.

LPG consists mainly of propane and butane. The octane rating is between 105 and 115, depending on the butane proportion. LPG is stored liquid at around 5 - 10 bar pressure.

The boiling point depends on the pressure and mixing ratio. At ambient pressure, it is between -42 °C (pure propane) and -0.5 °C (pure butane).

### Caution

The system works at an ambient temperature of approx. -8 °C to 100 °C.

Full function of the LPG system can only be guaranteed with liquid gas which complies with the minimum requirements of DIN EN 589.

## Fuel selector



Pressing **LPG** switches between petrol and liquid gas operation as soon as the required parameters (coolant temperature, gas temperature and minimum engine speed) have been reached. The requirements are usually fulfilled after around 60 seconds (depending on exterior temperature) and the first firm press on the accelerator. The LED status shows the current operating mode.

- off : petrol operation
- flashes : checking conditions for fuel transition to liquid gas operation. Illuminates if conditions are fulfilled.
- illuminates : liquid gas operation
- flashes 5 times and extinguishes : liquid gas tank is empty or failure in liquid gas system. A message is displayed in the DIC.

The selected fuel mode is stored and reactivated at the next ignition cycle if conditions allow.

As soon as the liquid gas tanks are empty, petrol operation is automatically engaged until the ignition is switched off.

Every six months, run the petrol tank down until control indicator ● illuminates, then refuel. This helps maintain fuel quality and system function for petrol operation.

Fill the tank completely at regular intervals to prevent corrosion in the tank.

### Faults and remedies

If gas mode is not possible, check the following:

- Is there enough liquid gas present?
- Is there enough petrol present for starting?

Due to extreme temperatures in combination with the gas composition, it may take slightly longer before the system switches from petrol to gas mode.

In extreme situations, the system may also switch back to petrol mode if the minimum requirements are not fulfilled. If conditions allow, it might be possible to manually switch back to liquid gas operation.

Seek the assistance of a workshop in the event of all other faults.

### Caution

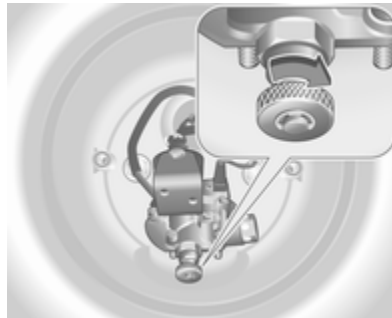
Repairs and adjustments may only be made by trained specialists in order to maintain the safety and warranty on the LPG system.

Liquid gas is given a particular odour (odourised) so that any leaks can be detected easily.

### ⚠ Warning

If you smell gas in the vehicle or in the immediate vicinity, switch to petrol mode immediately. No smoking. No naked flames or ignition sources.

If possible, close the manual shut-off valve on the multivalve. The multivalve is located on the liquid gas tank in the load compartment, underneath the rear floor cover.



Turn the thumb wheel clockwise.

If no further gas odour is perceptible when the manual shut-off valve is closed, the vehicle can be used in petrol mode. If the gas odour persists, do not start the engine. Have the cause of the fault remedied by a workshop.

When using underground car parks, follow the instructions of the operator and local laws.

### Notice

In the event of an accident, switch off the ignition and lights. Close the manual shut-off valve on multivalve.

### Refuelling



**⚠ Danger**

Before refuelling, switch off ignition and any external heaters with combustion chambers. Switch off any mobile phones.

Follow the operating and safety instructions of the filling station when refuelling.

**⚠ Danger**

Fuel is flammable and explosive. No smoking. No naked flames or sparks.

If you can smell fuel in your vehicle, have the cause of this remedied immediately by a workshop.

**Caution**

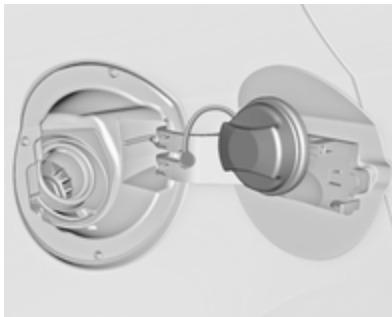
In case of misfuelling, do not switch on ignition.

Fuel filler flap is located at right rear side of the vehicle.



The fuel filler flap can only be opened if the vehicle is unlocked. Release the fuel filler flap by pushing the flap.

To open, turn the cap slowly to the left.



The fuel filler cap can be retained in the bracket on the fuel filler flap.

To refuel, fully insert the pump nozzle and switch it on.

After automatic cut-off, it can be topped up with max. two doses of fuel.

**Caution**

Wipe off any overflowing fuel immediately.

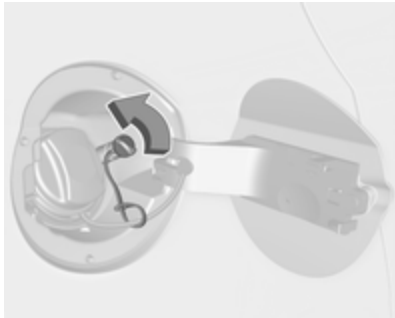
To close, turn the fuel filler cap to the right until it clicks.

Close the flap and engage.

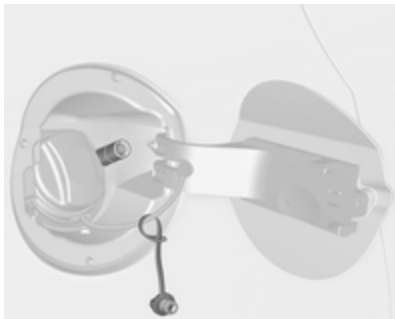
**Liquid gas refuelling**

Follow the operating and safety instructions of the filling station when refuelling.

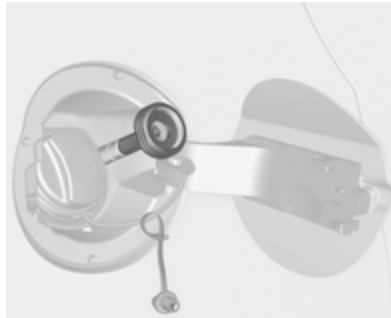
The filling valve for the liquid gas is behind the fuel filler cap.



Unscrew protective cap from the filler neck.



Screw the required adapter hand-tight onto the filler neck.



**ACME Adapter:** Screw the nut of the filling nozzle onto the adapter. Press locking lever on filler nozzle down.

**DISH filler neck:** Place the filler nozzle into the adapter. Press locking lever on filler nozzle down.

**Bayonet filler neck:** Place filler nozzle on the adapter and turn to the left or right through one quarter turn. Pull locking lever of filler nozzle fully.

**EURO filler neck:** Press the filler nozzle onto the adapter until it engages.

Press the button of the liquid gas supply point. The filling system stops or begins to run slowly when 80% of the tank volume is reached (maximum fill level).

Release button on filling system to stop the filling process. Release the locking lever and remove the filler nozzle. A small quantity of liquid gas can escape.

Remove adapter and stow in vehicle.

Fit protective cap to prevent the penetration of foreign bodies into the filler opening and the system.

### **⚠ Warning**

Due to the system design, an escape of liquid gas after releasing the locking lever is unavoidable. Avoid inhaling.

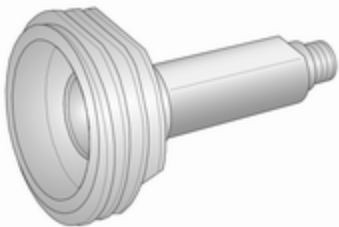
### **⚠ Warning**

The liquid gas tank may only be filled to 80% for safety reasons.

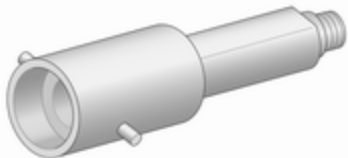
The multivalve on the liquid gas tank automatically limits the fill quantity. If a larger quantity is added, we recommend not exposing the vehicle to the sun until the excess amount has been used up.

### Filling adapter

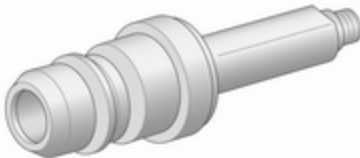
As filling systems are not standardised, different adapters are required which are available from Vauxhall Distributors and from Vauxhall Authorised Repairers.



**ACME adapter:** Belgium, Germany, Ireland, Luxembourg, Switzerland



**Bayonet adapter:** Netherlands, Norway, Spain, United Kingdom



**EURO adapter:** Spain



**DISH adapter:** Bosnia-Herzegovina, Bulgaria, Denmark, Estonia, France, Greece, Italy, Croatia, Latvia, Lithuania, Macedonia, Austria, Poland, Portugal, Romania, Sweden, Switzerland, Serbia, Slovakia, Slovenia, Czech Republic, Turkey, Ukraine, Hungary

### Fuel filler cap

Only use genuine fuel filler caps. Diesel-engined vehicles have special fuel filler caps.



## Fuel consumption - CO<sub>2</sub>-Emissions

The fuel consumption (combined) of the model Vauxhall Astra is within a range of 36 to 78 mpg.

The CO<sub>2</sub> emission (combined) is within a range of 184 to 94 g/km.

For the values specific to your vehicle, refer to the EEC Certificate of Conformity provided with your vehicle or other national registration documents.

### General information

The official fuel consumption and specific CO<sub>2</sub> emission figures quoted relate to the EU base model with standard equipment.

Fuel consumption data and CO<sub>2</sub> emission data are determined according to regulation R (EC) No. 715/2007 (in the latest applicable version), taking into consideration the vehicle weight in running order, as specified by the regulation.

The figures are provided only for the purpose of comparison between different vehicle variants and must not be taken as a guarantee for the actual fuel consumption of a particular vehicle. Additional equipment may result in slightly higher results than the stated consumption and CO<sub>2</sub> figures. Furthermore, fuel consumption is dependent on personal driving style as well as road and traffic conditions.

## Trailer hitch

### General information

Only use towing equipment that has been approved for your vehicle. Entrust retrofitting of towing equipment to a workshop. It may be necessary to make changes that affect the cooling system, heat shields or other equipment.

The bulb outage detection function for trailer brake light cannot detect a partial bulb outage, e.g. in case of 4 x 5 Watt bulbs, the function only detects lamp outage when only a single 5 Watt lamp remains or none remain.

Fitting of towing equipment could cover the opening of the towing eye. If this is the case use the coupling ball bar for towing. Always keep the coupling ball bar in the vehicle.

## Driving characteristics and towing tips

Before attaching a trailer, lubricate the coupling ball. However, do not do so if a stabiliser, which acts on the coupling ball, is being used to reduce snaking movements.

For trailers with low driving stability and caravan trailers with a permitted gross vehicle weight of more than 1300 kg (Sports tourer: 1200 kg) the use of a stabiliser is strongly recommended when driving above 50 mph.

If the trailer starts snaking, drive more slowly, do not attempt to correct the steering and brake sharply if necessary.

When driving downhill, drive in the same gear as if driving uphill and drive at a similar speed.

Adjust tyre pressure to the value specified for full load ⇨ 307.

## Trailer towing

### Trailer loads

The permissible trailer loads are vehicle and engine-dependent maximum values which must not be exceeded. The actual trailer load is the difference between the actual gross weight of the trailer and the actual coupling socket load with the trailer coupled.

The permissible trailer loads are specified in the vehicle documents. In general, they are valid for gradients up to max. 12%.

The permitted trailer load applies up to the specified incline and up to an altitude of 1000 metres above sea level. Since engine power decreases as altitude increases due to the air becoming thinner, therefore reducing climbing ability, the permissible gross train weight also decreases by 10% for every 1000 metres of additional altitude. The gross train weight does not have to be reduced when driving on roads with slight inclines (less than 8%, e.g. motorways).

The permissible gross train weight must not be exceeded. This weight is specified on the identification plate ⇨ 288.

### Vertical coupling load

The vertical coupling load is the load exerted by the trailer on the coupling ball. It can be varied by changing the weight distribution when loading the trailer.

The maximum permissible vertical coupling load (75 kg) is specified on the towing equipment identification plate and in the vehicle documents. Always aim for the maximum load, especially in the case of heavy trailers. The vertical coupling load should never fall below 25 kg.

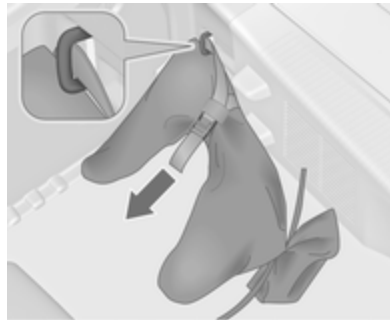
## Rear axle load

When the trailer is coupled and the towing vehicle fully loaded, the permissible rear axle load (see identification plate or vehicle documents) may be exceeded by 60 kg, the gross vehicle weight rating may be exceeded by 60 kg. If the permissible rear axle load is exceeded, a maximum speed of 60 mph applies.

## Towing equipment

Caution
When operating without a trailer, remove the coupling ball bar.

## Stowage of coupling ball bar



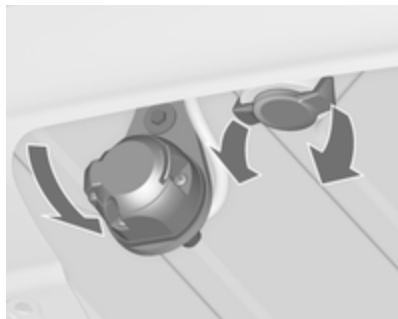
The bag with the coupling ball bar is stowed in the rear stowage compartment on the floor.

Place the strap through the lashing eye, wrap around twice and tighten the strap to secure the bag.

## Fitting the coupling ball bar




All versions except 3-door hatchback: Press fastenings inward and fold the cover downward at the front. Remove cover.




Disengage and fold down the socket. Remove the sealing plug from the opening for the coupling ball bar and stow it.

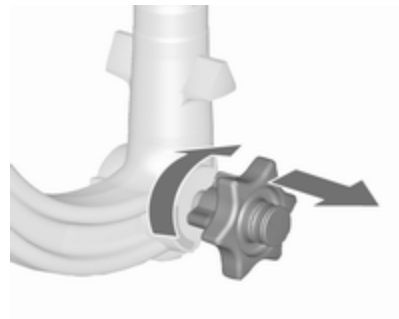
### Checking the tensioning of the coupling ball bar



- Red marking on rotary knob must point towards green marking on coupling ball bar.
- The gap between the rotary knob and the coupling ball bar must be approx. 6 mm.
- The key must be in position .

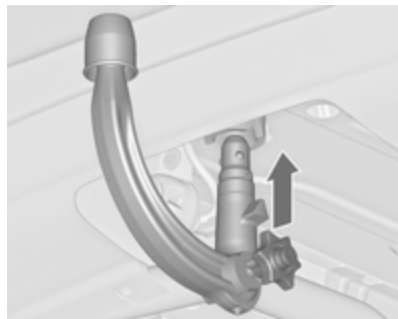
Otherwise, the coupling ball bar must be tensioned before being inserted:

- Unlock coupling ball bar by turning key to position .



- Pull out rotary knob and turn clockwise as far as it will go.

### Inserting the coupling ball bar



Insert the tensioned coupling ball bar in the opening and push firmly upwards until it audibly engages.

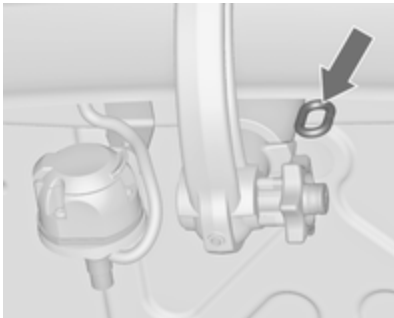
The rotary handle snaps back into its original position resting against the coupling ball bar without a gap.

### **⚠ Warning**

Do not touch rotary handle during insertion.

Lock the coupling ball bar by turning the key to position . Remove the key and close the protective flap.

### **Eye for break-away stopping cable**



Attach breakaway stopping cable to eye.

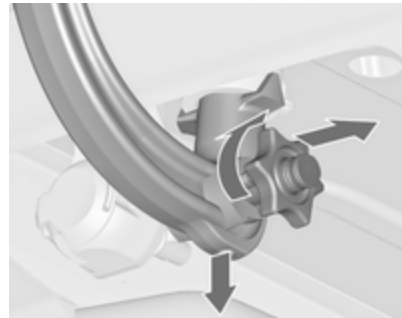
### **Check that the coupling ball bar is correctly installed**


- Green marking on rotary knob must point towards green marking on coupling ball bar.
- There must be no gap between the rotary handle and the coupling ball bar.
- The coupling ball bar must be firmly engaged in the opening.
- The coupling ball bar must be locked and the key removed.

### **⚠ Warning**

Towing a trailer is permitted only when a coupling ball bar is fitted correctly. If the coupling ball bar does not engage correctly, seek the assistance of a workshop.

### **Dismounting the coupling ball bar**



Open the protective flap and turn the key to position  to unlock the coupling ball bar.

Pull out rotary handle and turn clockwise as far as it will go. Pull out coupling ball bar downwards.

Insert sealing plug in opening. Fold away socket.

All versions except 3-door hatchback: Attach the rear side of the cover into the recess of the bumper and fold the front side upward.



Press fastenings outward.

### **Trailer stability assist**

If the system detects snaking movements, engine power is reduced and the vehicle/trailer combination is selectively braked until the snaking ceases. While system is working keep steering wheel as still as possible.

Trailer stability assist (TSA) is a function of the Electronic Stability Control ↪ 179.

## Vehicle care

### General Information ..... 226

- Accessories and vehicle modifications ..... 226
- Vehicle storage ..... 226
- End-of-life vehicle recovery ..... 226

### Vehicle checks ..... 227

- Performing work ..... 227
- Bonnet ..... 227
- Engine oil ..... 228
- Engine coolant ..... 229
- Power steering fluid ..... 230
- Washer fluid ..... 230
- Brakes ..... 231
- Brake fluid ..... 231
- Vehicle battery ..... 231
- Diesel fuel system bleeding ..... 233
- Wiper blade replacement ..... 233

### Bulb replacement ..... 234

- Halogen headlights ..... 234
- Adaptive forward lighting ..... 237
- Fog lights ..... 238
- Front turn signal lights ..... 240
- Tail lights ..... 242
- Side turn signal lights ..... 250
- Number plate light ..... 251

- Interior lights ..... 252
- Instrument panel illumination ... 252

### Electrical system ..... 252

- Fuses ..... 252
- Engine compartment fuse box . 253
- Instrument panel fuse box ..... 255
- Load compartment fuse box ... 256

### Vehicle tools ..... 259

- Tools ..... 259

### Wheels and tyres ..... 261

- Winter tyres ..... 261
- Tyre designations ..... 261
- Tyre pressure ..... 261
- Tyre pressure monitoring system ..... 262
- Tread depth ..... 265
- Changing tyre and wheel size . 266
- Wheel covers ..... 266
- Tyre chains ..... 266
- Tyre repair kit ..... 267
- Wheel changing ..... 270
- Spare wheel ..... 274

### Jump starting ..... 278

### Towing ..... 280

- Towing the vehicle ..... 280
- Towing another vehicle ..... 281

### Appearance care ..... 282

- Exterior care ..... 282
- Interior care ..... 284

## General Information

### Accessories and vehicle modifications

We recommend the use of genuine parts and accessories and factory approved parts specific for your vehicle type. We cannot assess or guarantee reliability of other products - even if they have a regulatory or otherwise granted approval.

Do not make any modifications to the electrical system, e.g. changes of electronic control units (chip tuning).

#### Caution

When transporting the vehicle on a train or on a recovery vehicle, the mud flaps might be damaged.

## Vehicle storage

### Storage for a long period of time

If the vehicle is to be stored for several months:

- Wash and wax the vehicle.
- Have the wax in the engine compartment and underbody checked.
- Clean and preserve the rubber seals.
- Fill up fuel tank completely.
- Change the engine oil.
- Drain the washer fluid reservoir.
- Check the coolant antifreeze and corrosion protection.
- Adjust tyre pressure to the value specified for full load.
- Park the vehicle in a dry, well ventilated place. Engage first or reverse gear or set selector lever to **P**. Prevent the vehicle from rolling.
- Do not apply the parking brake.

- Open the bonnet, close all doors and lock the vehicle.
- Disconnect the clamp from the negative terminal of the vehicle battery. Beware that all systems are not functional, e.g. anti-theft alarm system.

### Putting back into operation

When the vehicle is to be put back into operation:

- Connect the clamp to the negative terminal of the vehicle battery. Activate the electronics of the power windows.
- Check tyre pressure.
- Fill up the washer fluid reservoir.
- Check the engine oil level.
- Check the coolant level.
- Fit the number plate if necessary.

### End-of-life vehicle recovery

Information on end-of-life vehicle recovery centres and the recycling of end-of-life vehicles is available on our



website, where legally required. Only entrust this work to an authorised recycling centre.

Gas vehicles must be recycled by a service centre authorised for gas vehicles.

## Vehicle checks

### Performing work



#### **⚠ Warning**

Only perform engine compartment checks when the ignition is off.

The cooling fan may start operating even if the ignition is off.

#### **⚠ Danger**

The ignition system and Xenon headlights use extremely high voltage. Do not touch.

## Bonnet

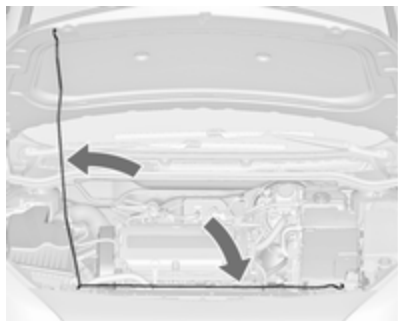
### Opening



Pull the release lever and return it to its original position.



Move the safety catch sideways to the left vehicle side and open the bonnet.



Secure the bonnet support.

If the bonnet is opened during an Autostop, the engine will be restarted automatically for safety reasons.

### Closing

Before closing the bonnet, press the support into the holder.

Lower the bonnet and allow it to fall into the latch from a low height (20-25 cm). Check that the bonnet is engaged.

### Caution

Do not press the bonnet into the latch, to avoid dents.

### Engine oil

Check the engine oil level manually on a regular basis to prevent damage to the engine. Ensure that the correct specification of oil is used.

Recommended fluids and lubricants ⇨ 286.

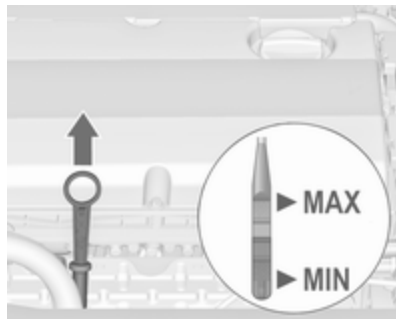
Check with the vehicle on a level surface. The engine must be at operating temperature and switched off for at least 5 minutes.

Pull out the dipstick, wipe it clean, insert it to the stop on the handle, pull out and read the engine oil level.

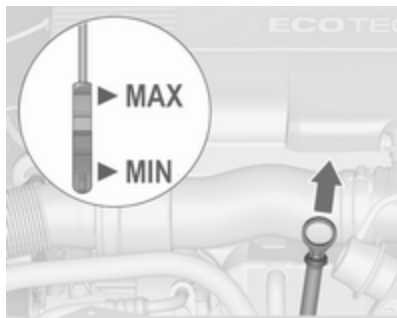
### Caution

It is the owner's responsibility to maintain the proper level of an appropriate quality oil in the engine.

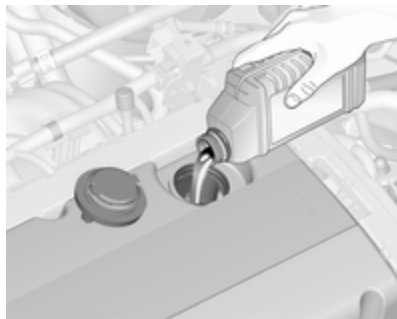
Insert dipstick to the stop on the handle and make half a turn.



Different dipsticks are used depending on engine variant.



When the engine oil level has dropped to the **MIN** mark, top up engine oil.



We recommend the use of the same grade of engine oil that was used at last change.

The engine oil level must not exceed the **MAX** mark on the dipstick.

#### Caution

Overfilled engine oil must be drained or suctioned out.

Capacities ⇨ 305.

Fit the cap on straight and tighten it.

### Engine coolant

The coolant provides freeze protection down to approx.  $-28^{\circ}\text{C}$ . In northern countries with very low temperatures, the factory filled coolant provides frost protection down to approx.  $-37^{\circ}\text{C}$ .

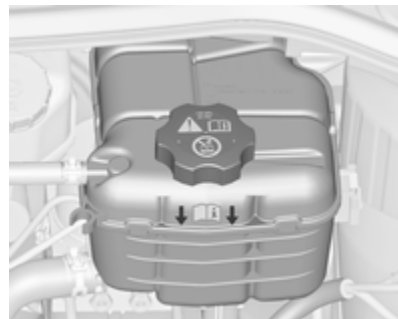
#### Caution

Only use approved antifreeze.

### Coolant level

#### Caution

Too low a coolant level can cause engine damage.



If the cooling system is cold, the coolant level should be above the filling line mark. Top up if the level is low.

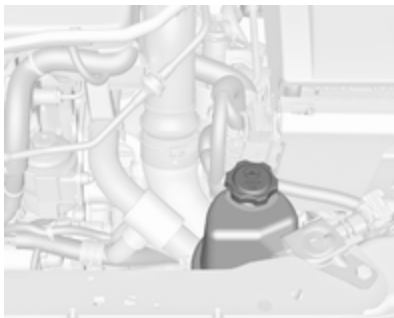
**⚠ Warning**

Allow the engine to cool before opening the cap. Carefully open the cap, relieving the pressure slowly.

To top up, use a 1:1 mixture of approved coolant concentrate mixed with clean tap water. If no coolant concentrate is available, use clean tap water. Install the cap tightly. Have the coolant concentration checked and have the cause of the coolant loss remedied by a workshop.

**Power steering fluid****Caution**

Extremely small amounts of contamination can cause steering system damage and cause it to not work properly. Do not allow contaminants to contact the fluid side of the reservoir cap/dipstick or from entering the reservoir.



Power steering fluid level normally does not have to be checked. If an unusual noise sounds during steering or the power steering reacts unusually, seek the assistance of a workshop.

**Washer fluid**

Fill with clean water mixed with a suitable quantity of approved windscreen washer fluid which contains antifreeze.

**Caution**

Only washer fluid with a sufficient antifreeze concentration provides protection at low temperatures or a sudden drop in temperature.

Use of washer fluid containing isopropanol can damage exterior lamps.

## Brakes

In the event of minimum thickness of the brake lining, a squealing noise sounds during braking.

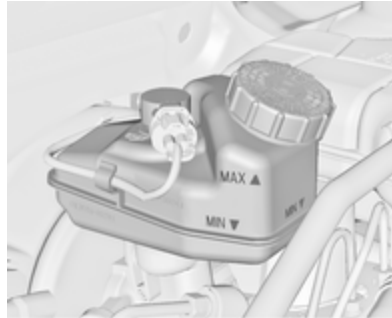
Continued driving is possible but have the brake lining replaced as soon as possible.

Once new brake linings are installed, do not brake unnecessarily hard for the first few journeys.

## Brake fluid

### Warning

Brake fluid is poisonous and corrosive. Avoid contact with eyes, skin, fabrics and painted surfaces.



The brake fluid level must be between the **MIN** and **MAX** marks.

If fluid level is below **MIN** seek the assistance of a workshop.

Brake and clutch fluid ⇨ 286.

## Vehicle battery

Vehicles without stop-start system will be equipped with a lead acid battery. Vehicles with stop-start system will be equipped with an AGM battery which is not a lead acid battery.

The vehicle battery is maintenance-free provided that the driving profile allows sufficient charging of the

battery. Short-distance-driving and frequent engine starts can discharge the battery. Avoid the use of unnecessary electrical consumers.



Batteries do not belong in household waste. They must be disposed of at an appropriate recycling collection point.

Laying up the vehicle for more than 4 weeks can lead to battery discharge. Disconnect the clamp from the negative terminal of the vehicle battery.

Ensure the ignition is switched off before connecting or disconnecting the vehicle battery.

The anti-theft alarm siren must be deactivated as follows: Switch the ignition on then off, disconnect the vehicle's battery within 15 seconds.

Vehicle battery discharge protection ⇨ 152.

## Replacing the vehicle battery

### Notice

Any deviation from the instructions given in this section may lead to temporary deactivation of the stop-start system.

When the vehicle battery is being replaced, please ensure that there are no open ventilation holes in the vicinity of the positive terminal. If a ventilation hole is open in this area, it must be closed off with a dummy cap, and the ventilation in the vicinity of the negative terminal must be opened.

Only use vehicle batteries that allow the fuse box to be mounted above the vehicle battery.

In vehicles with stop-start system, be sure to have the AGM (Absorptive Glass Mat) battery replaced with another AGM battery.



An AGM battery can be identified by the label on the battery. We recommend the use of an original Vauxhall vehicle battery.

### Notice

Using an AGM vehicle battery different from the original Vauxhall vehicle battery may result in a lower performance of the stop-start system.

We recommend that you have the vehicle battery replaced by a workshop.

Stop-start system ⇨ 166.

## Charging the vehicle battery

### Warning

On vehicles with stop-start system, ensure that the charging potential does not exceed 14.6 volts when using a battery charger. Otherwise the vehicle battery might be damaged.

Jump starting ⇨ 278.

### Warning label

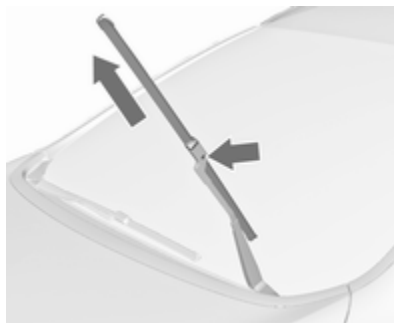


**Meaning of symbols:**

- No sparks, naked flames or smoking.
- Always shield eyes. Explosive gases can cause blindness or injury.
- Keep the vehicle battery out of reach of children.
- The vehicle battery contains sulphuric acid which could cause blindness or serious burn injuries.
- See the Owner's Manual for further information.
- Explosive gas may be present in the vicinity of the vehicle battery.

**Diesel fuel system bleeding**

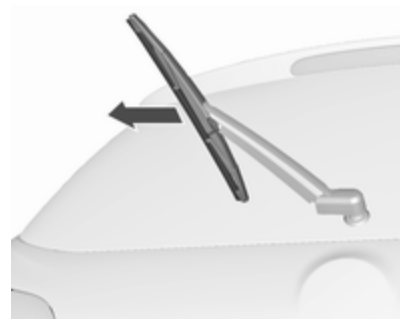
If the tank has been run dry, the diesel fuel system must be bled. Switch on the ignition three times for 15 seconds at a time. Then crank the engine for a maximum of 40 seconds. Repeat this process after no less than 5 seconds. If the engine fails to start, seek the assistance of a workshop.

**Wiper blade replacement**

Lift the wiper arm until it stays in the raised position, press button to disengage the wiper blade and remove.

Attach the wiper blade slightly angled to the wiper arm and push until it engages.

Lower wiper arm carefully.

**Wiper blade on the rear window**

Lift wiper arm. Disengage wiper blade as shown in illustration and remove.

Attach the wiper blade slightly angled to the wiper arm and push until it engages.

Lower wiper arm carefully.

## Bulb replacement

Switch off the ignition and switch off the relevant switch or close the doors.

Only hold a new bulb at the base. Do not touch the bulb glass with bare hands.

Use only the same bulb type for replacement.

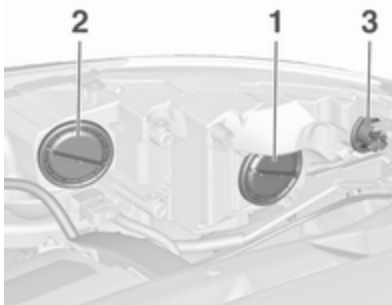
Replace headlight bulbs from within the engine compartment.

### Bulb check

After a bulb replacement switch on the ignition, operate and check the lights.

## Halogen headlights

5-door hatchback, 4-door saloon,  
Sports tourer



Halogen headlights with separate bulbs for low beam and high beam.

**Low beam (1)** outer bulb.

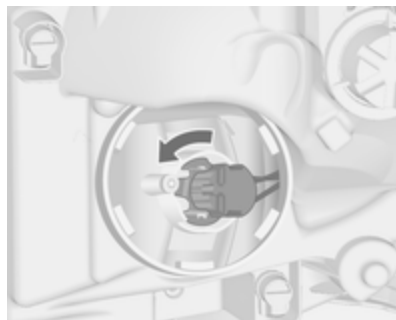
**High beam (2)** inner bulb.

**Sidelight/Daytime running light (3).**

### Low beam (1)

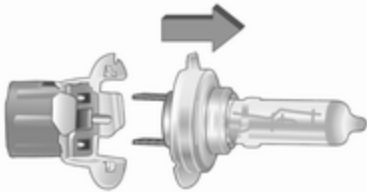


1. Rotate the cap (1) anticlockwise and remove it.





2. Rotate the bulb holder anticlockwise to disengage. Withdraw the bulb holder from the reflector.



3. Detach the bulb from the bulb holder and replace the bulb.
4. Insert the bulb holder, engaging the two lugs into the reflector and rotate clockwise to secure.
5. Fit the cap and rotate clockwise.

### High beam (2)

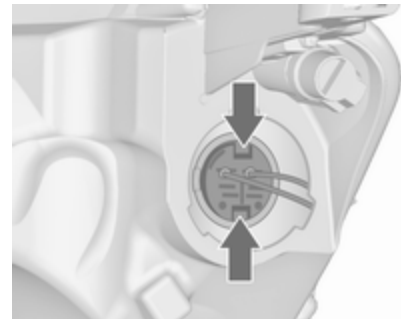


1. Rotate the cap (2) anticlockwise and remove it.
2. Rotate the bulb holder anticlockwise to disengage. Withdraw the bulb holder from the reflector.
3. Detach the bulb from the bulb holder and replace the bulb.
4. Insert the bulb holder, engaging the two lugs into the reflector and rotate clockwise to secure.
5. Fit the cap and rotate clockwise.

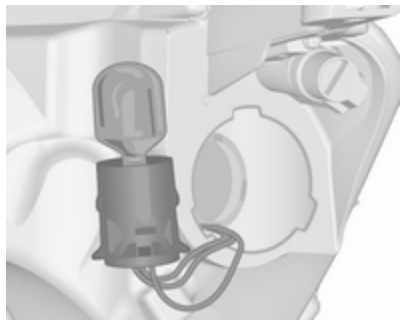
### Sidelights/Daytime running light (3)



1. Rotate the cap (3) anticlockwise and remove it. Use the screwdriver to rotate the cap.

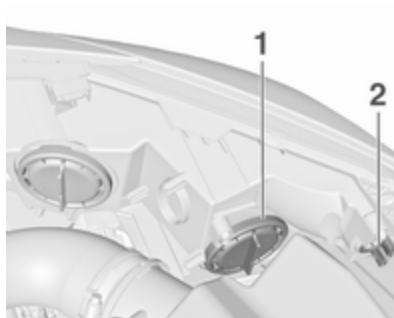


2. Press latches together and withdraw the bulb holder from the reflector.



3. Remove the bulb from the socket and replace the bulb.
4. Insert the bulb holder into the reflector. Fit the cap and rotate clockwise.

### 3-door hatchback



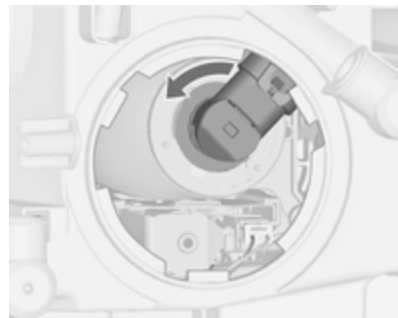
**Bi-Halogen Headlight (1)** with one bulb for low and high beam.

**Sidelight/Daytime running light (2).**

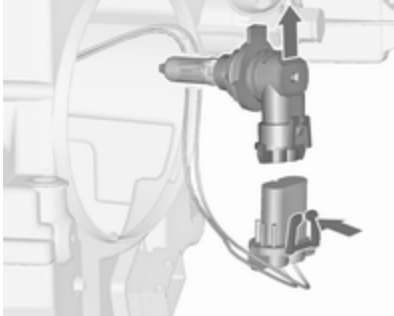
### Low/High beam (1)



1. Rotate the cap (1) anticlockwise and remove it.



2. Rotate the bulb holder anticlockwise to disengage. Withdraw the bulb holder from the reflector.

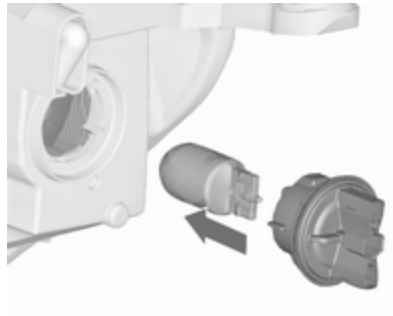


3. Disengage the bulb holder from the plug connector by pressing the retaining lug.
4. Replace the bulb and connect bulb holder with the plug connector.
5. Insert the bulb holder, engaging the two lugs into the reflector and rotate clockwise to secure.
6. Fit the cap and rotate clockwise.

### Sidelight/Daytime running light (2)



1. Rotate bulb socket (2) anticlockwise to disengage. Withdraw the bulb socket from the reflector.



2. Remove the bulb from the socket by pulling.
3. Replace and insert new bulb into socket.
4. Insert the bulb socket into the reflector and turn clockwise.

### Adaptive forward lighting

#### **⚠ Danger**

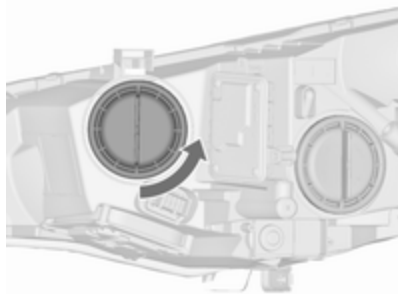
Adaptive forward lighting system uses Xenon headlights.

Xenon headlights work under extremely high electrical voltage. Do not touch. Have bulbs replaced by a workshop.

Sidelight/Daytime running lights are designed as Light Emitting Diodes (LEDs) and cannot be changed.

Bulbs for corner lighting can be changed.

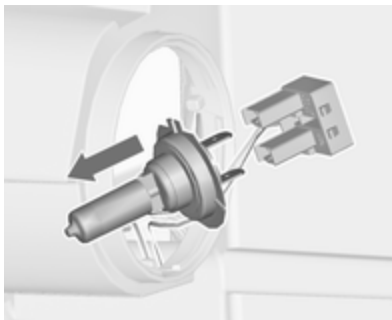
## Corner lighting



1. Rotate the cap anticlockwise and remove it.



2. Rotate the bulb holder anticlockwise to disengage. Withdraw the bulb holder from the reflector.



3. Disengage the bulb from the plug connector by pulling.
4. Replace the bulb and connect bulb holder with the plug connector.
5. Insert the bulb holder, engaging the two lugs into the reflector and rotate clockwise to secure.
6. Fit the cap and rotate clockwise.

## Fog lights

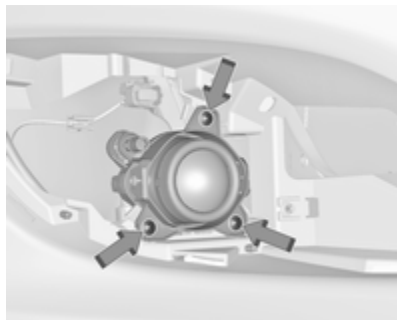
5-door hatchback, 4-door saloon, Sports tourer



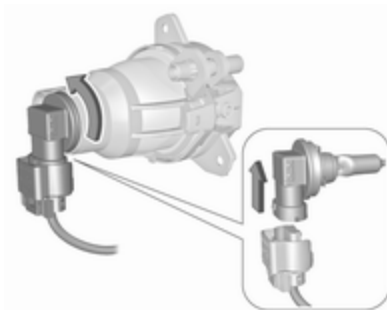
1. Release both caps with a screwdriver at the marked area.



2. Unscrew both screws and remove turn light assembly from the bumper.



3. Unscrew three screws and remove fog light assembly from the bumper.



4. Turn the bulb socket anticlockwise and remove it from the reflector.

5. Disengage the bulb socket from the plug connector by pressing the retaining lug.

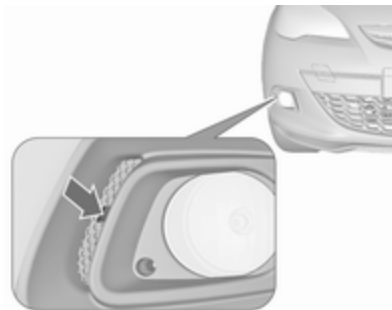
6. Replace and insert bulb socket into the reflector, turn socket clockwise and attach the plug connector.

7. Attach fog light assembly into the bumper and fix with three screws.

8. Attach turn light assembly into the bumper and fix with two screws.

9. Engage both caps.

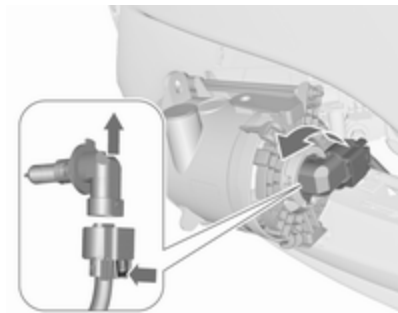
### 3-door hatchback



1. Disengage the cover with a screwdriver in the recess and remove the cover.



2. Unscrew both screws and remove light assembly from the bumper.



3. Turn the bulb socket anticlockwise and remove it from the reflector.
4. Disengage the bulb socket from the plug connector by pressing the retaining lug.
5. Remove and replace the bulb socket with bulb and attach the plug connector.
6. Insert the bulb socket into the reflector by turning clockwise and engage.
7. Mount the light assembly by tightening both screws.
8. Assemble and engage the cover.

## Front turn signal lights

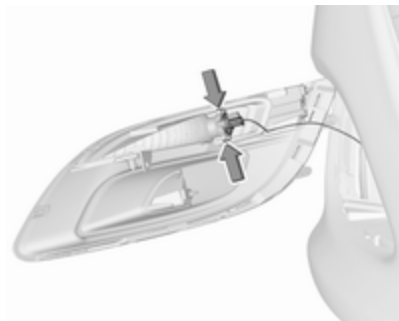
### 5-door hatchback, 4-door saloon, Sports tourer



1. Release both caps with a screwdriver at the marked area.



2. Unscrew both screws and remove light assembly from the bumper.



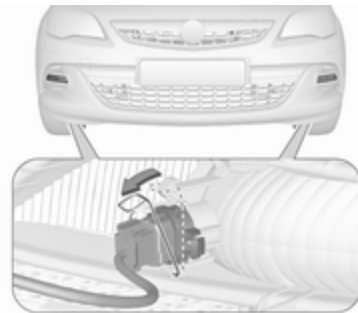
3. Disengage the bulb socket from the reflector by pressing both retaining lugs.



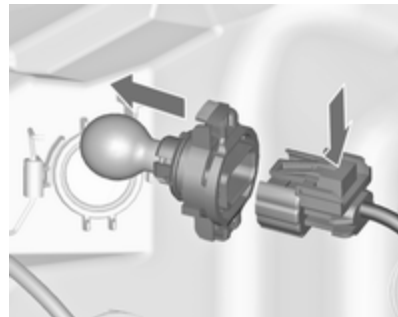
4. Disengage the plug connector from the bulb socket by pressing the retaining lug.
5. Remove and replace the bulb socket with bulb.
6. Insert the bulb socket into the reflector and attach the plug connector.
7. Attach light assembly into the bumper and fix with both screws.
8. Engage both caps.

**5-door hatchback, 4-door saloon,  
Sports tourer with Sport/GSi front bumper**

The bulbs are accessible from beneath the vehicle.

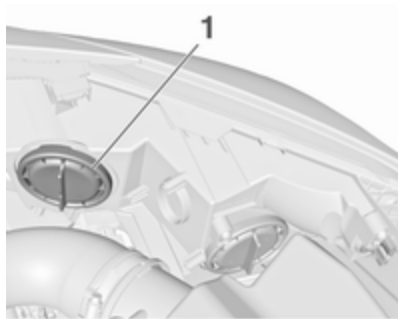


1. Disengage the spring clip and then swivel it backwards.
2. Pull the bulb socket with bulb out of the reflector.



3. Disengage the bulb socket from the plug connector by pressing the retaining lug.
4. Remove and replace the bulb socket with bulb.
5. Attach the plug connector.
6. Insert the bulb socket into the reflector.
7. Swivel the spring clip forwards and engage.

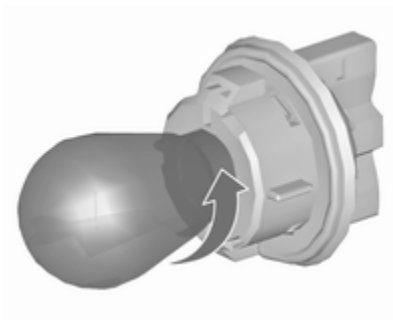
### 3-door hatchback



1. Rotate cap (1) anticlockwise and remove it.



2. Rotate bulb socket anticlockwise to disengage and withdraw from the reflector.



3. Remove the bulb from the socket by turning anticlockwise.

4. Replace and insert new bulb into socket by turning clockwise.
5. Insert the bulb socket into the reflector and turn clockwise.
6. Fit the cap and rotate clockwise.

## Tail lights

### 5-door hatchback

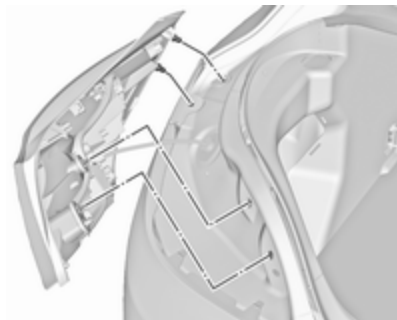


1. Release the cover on the respective side and remove it.

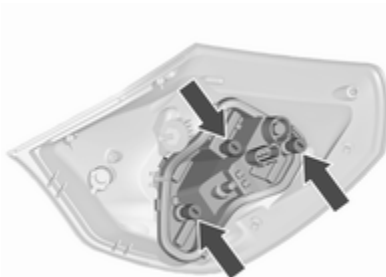




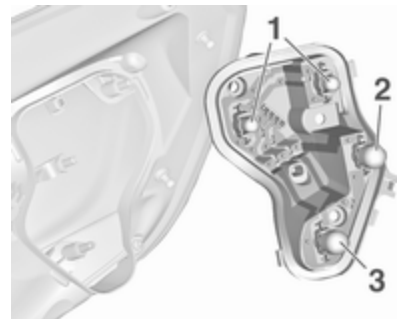
2. Unscrew the plastic securing nut from the inside by hand.



3. Carefully withdraw the tail light assembly from recesses and remove. Make sure that the cable duct remains in position.
4. Detach the cable from the retainer.
5. Detach the wiring plug from the bulb carrier.



6. Unscrew the three screws with a screwdriver and remove the bulb carrier from the light assembly.



7. Remove and replace the bulb by withdrawing or pushing the bulb slightly into the socket and rotating anticlockwise:
- Tail light (1)  
 Brake light (2)  
 Turn signal light (3)
8. Insert the bulb carrier into the tail light assembly and screw into place. Connect the wiring plug and press the cable into the retainer. Fit light assembly with the retaining pins into the recesses of the vehicle body and tighten the plastic securing nut

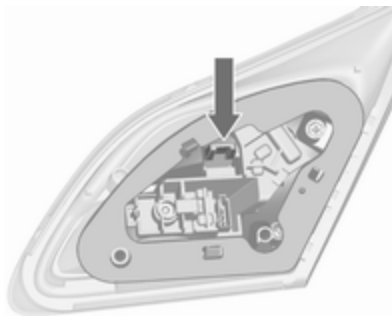
from the inside of the load compartment.

Close the cover and engage.

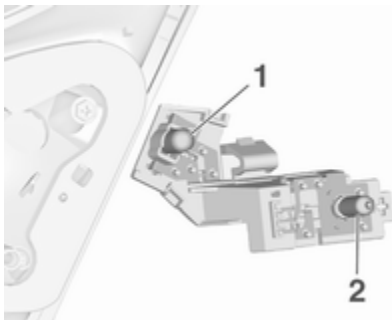
### Light assembly in the tailgate



1. Open the tailgate and remove the cover and both blind cover on the respective side.
2. Unscrew and remove three screws.
3. Remove the light assembly. Make sure that the cable duct remains in position.



4. Press the retaining lug and remove the bulb carrier from the light assembly.



5. Remove and replace the bulb by withdrawing or pushing the bulb

slightly into the socket and rotating anticlockwise:

Tail light (1)

Rear fog light/Reverse light (2), depending on the side.

6. Insert the bulb carrier into the tail light assembly. Fit light assembly on the tailgate and tighten the screws from the inside. Attach all covers.

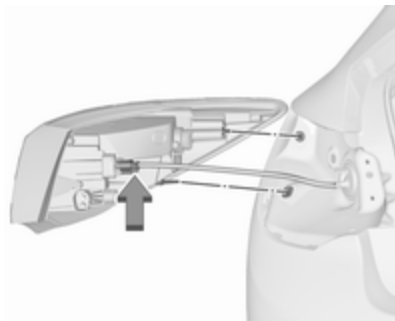
### 4-door saloon



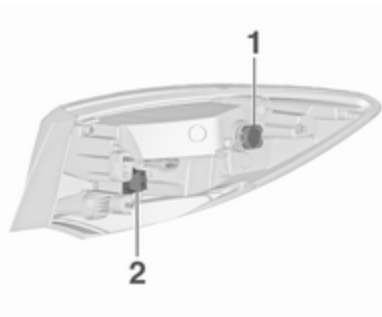
1. Remove cover on the responding side.



2. Unscrew two plastic securing nuts from the inside by hand.



3. Carefully withdraw tail light assembly from recesses and remove. Make sure that the cable duct remains in position.
4. Detach wiring plug from bulb carrier.



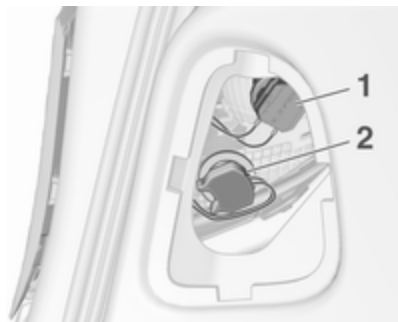
5. Remove the bulb holder by turning and replace the bulb by withdrawing or pushing the bulb slightly into the socket and rotating anticlockwise:  
 Tail light/Brake light (1)  
 Turn signal light (2)
6. Insert bulb holder and turn clockwise. Connect the wiring plug. Fit light assembly with the

retaining pins into the recesses of the vehicle body and tighten the plastic securing nuts from the inside of the load compartment. Attach cover.

#### Light assembly in the tailgate



1. Open the tailgate and remove the cover on the respective side.



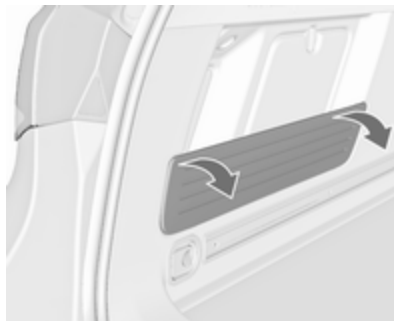
2. Remove the bulb holder by turning and replace the bulb by withdrawing or pushing the bulb slightly into the socket and rotating anticlockwise:

Tail light (1)

Rear fog light/Reverse light (2), depending on the side.

3. Insert bulb holder and turn clockwise. Attach cover.

### Sports tourer



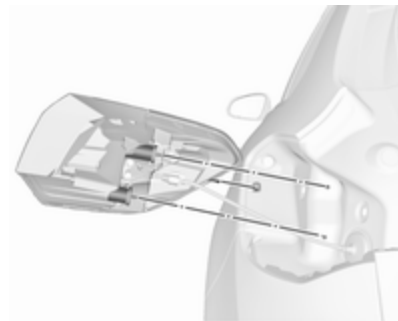
1. On left-hand side, fold down the blind and remove.



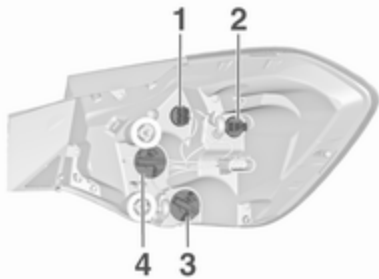
2. Remove cover on the respective side.



3. Unscrew two plastic securing nuts from the inside by hand.



4. Carefully withdraw tail light assembly from recesses and remove. Make sure that the cable duct remains in position.
5. Detach wiring plug from bulb carrier.



6. Remove the bulb holder by turning anticlockwise and replace the bulb by withdrawing or pushing the bulb slightly into the socket and rotating anticlockwise:

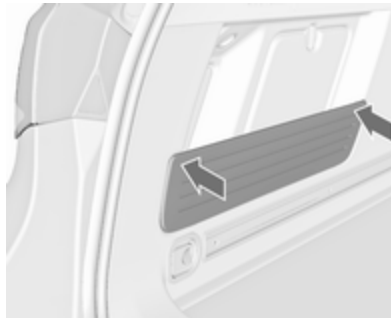
Tail lights (1 + 2)

Turn signal light (3)

Brake light (4)

7. Connect the wiring plug and press the cable into the retainer. Fit light

assembly with the retaining pins into the recesses of the vehicle body and tighten the plastic securing nuts from the inside of the load compartment. Attach cover.

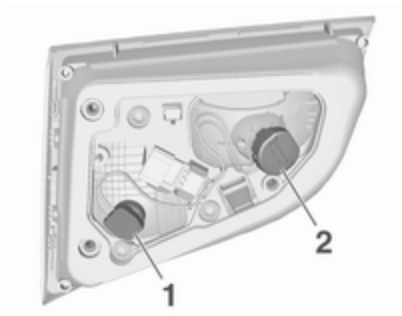


When assembling press the blind on the left-hand side into the rubber grommets to reach full retention force.

### Light assembly in the tailgate



1. Open the tailgate and remove the blind covers on the respective side.
2. Unscrew and remove the screws.
3. Remove the tail light assembly and detach wiring plug from the bulb carrier.

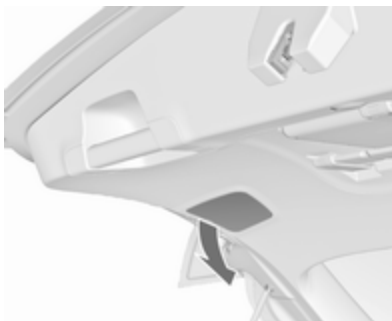


4. Remove the bulb holder by turning anticlockwise and replace the bulb by withdrawing or pushing the bulb slightly into the socket and rotating anticlockwise:

Tail light (1)

Rear fog light/Reverse light (2), depending on the side.

5. Fit the light assembly in the tailgate and tighten the screws from the inside. Attach all covers.



Rear fog light respectively reverse light (2), depending on the side, can be replaced by a cover in the tailgate without removing the light assembly: remove cover, turn bulb holder and replace the bulb by rotating anticlockwise.



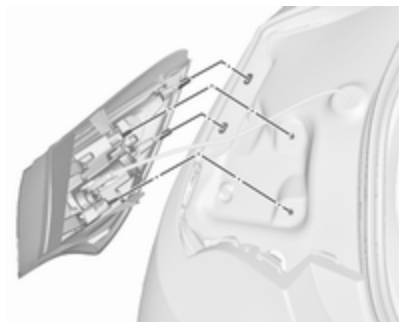
### 3-door hatchback



1. Release the cover on the respective side and remove it.

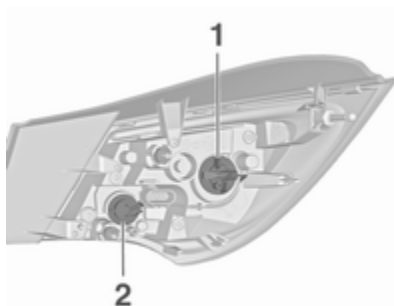


2. Unscrew both plastic securing nuts from the inside by hand.



3. Carefully withdraw the light assembly from the recesses and remove.

4. Detach wiring plug from bulb carrier.



5. Remove the bulb holder by turning and replace the bulb by withdrawing or pushing the bulb slightly into the socket and rotating anticlockwise:

Tail light/Brake light (1)

Turn signal light (2)

**version with Light Emitting Diode (LED)**

Only turn signal light (2) can be changed.

6. Insert and turn bulb holder clockwise into the tail light assembly. Connect the wiring

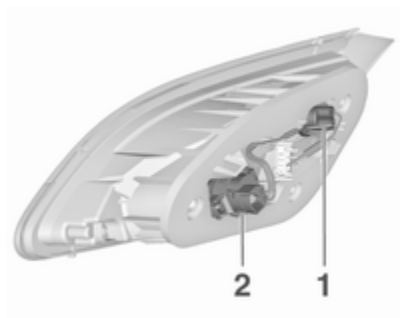
plug with the light assembly. Fit light assembly with the retaining pins into the recesses of the vehicle body and tighten the plastic securing nuts from the inside of the load compartment. Close cover and engage.

#### Light assembly in the tailgate



1. Open the tailgate and remove the covers on the respective side.
2. Unscrew three screws.
3. Remove the tail light assembly from tailgate.
4. Remove the bulb holder by turning and replace the bulb by withdrawing or pushing the bulb

slightly into the socket and rotating anticlockwise:



Tail light (1)

Rear fog light/Reverse light (2), depending on the side.

(2) (only one side)

**version with Light Emitting Diode (LED)**

Only rear fog light respectively reverse light, depending on the side, can be changed.

5. Insert and turn bulb holder clockwise into the tail light assembly. Fit the tail light

assembly in the tailgate and tighten the screws. Attach all covers.

## Side turn signal lights

### 3-door hatchback

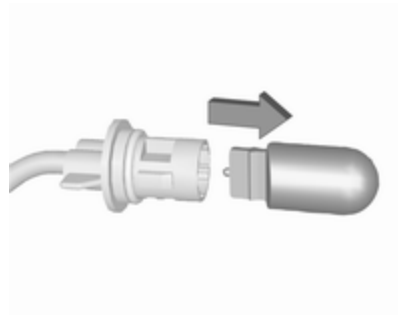
To replace bulb, remove lamp housing:



1. Slide lamp to its left side and remove with its right end.



2. Turn bulb holder anticlockwise and remove from housing.



3. Pull bulb from bulb holder and replace it.



4. Insert bulb holder and turn clockwise.
5. Insert left end of the lamp, slide to the left and insert right end.

**5-door hatchback, 4-door saloon, Sports tourer**

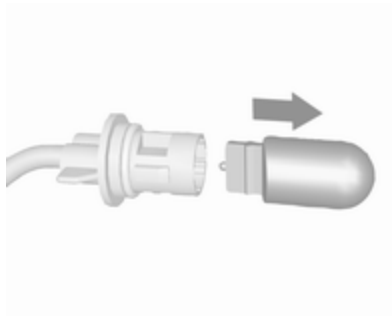
To replace bulb, remove lamp housing:



1. Slide lamp to its left side and remove with its right end.



2. Turn bulb holder anticlockwise and remove from housing.



3. Pull bulb from bulb holder and replace it.

4. Insert bulb holder and turn clockwise.
5. Insert left end of the lamp, slide to the left and insert right end.

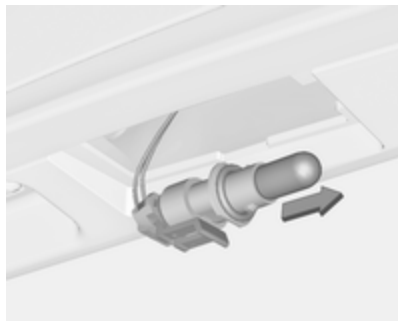
**Number plate light**



1. Insert screwdriver in recess of the cover, press to the side and release spring.



2. Remove lamp downwards, taking care not to pull on the cable.



3. Remove bulb holder from lamp housing by turning anticlockwise.

4. Pull bulb from bulb holder and replace it.  
5. Insert bulb holder into lamp housing and turn clockwise.  
6. Insert lamp into bumper and let engage.

## Interior lights

### Courtesy light, reading lights

Have bulbs replaced by a workshop.

### Load compartment light

Have bulbs replaced by a workshop.

### Instrument panel illumination

Have bulbs replaced by a workshop.

## Electrical system

### Fuses

Data on the replacement fuse must match the data on the defective fuse.

There are three fuse boxes in the vehicle:

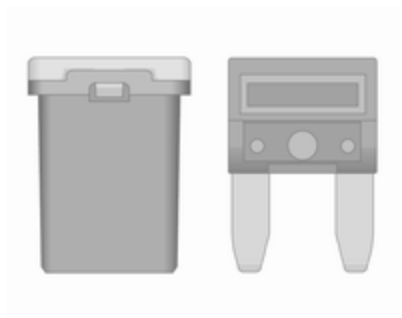
- in the front left of the engine compartment
- in left-hand drive vehicles, in the interior behind the storage compartment, or, in right-hand drive vehicles, behind the glovebox
- behind a cover on the left side of the load compartment

Before replacing a fuse, turn off the respective switch and the ignition.

A blown fuse can be recognised by its melted wire. Do not replace the fuse until the cause of the fault has been remedied.

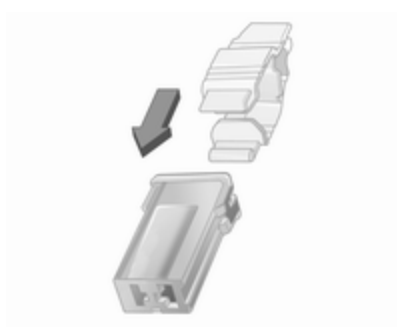
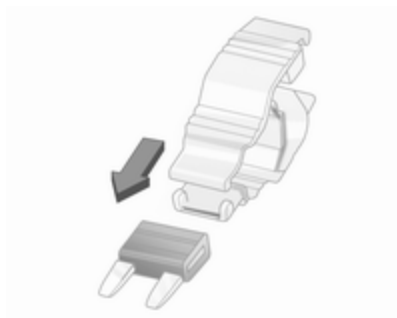
Some functions are protected by several fuses.

Fuses may also be inserted without existence of a function.



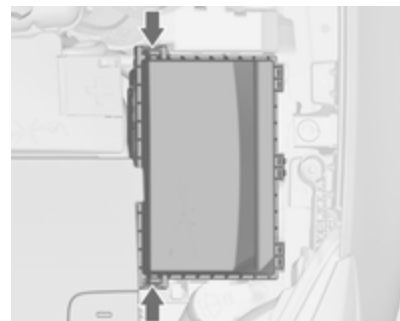
### Fuse extractor

A fuse extractor may be located in the fuse box in the engine compartment.

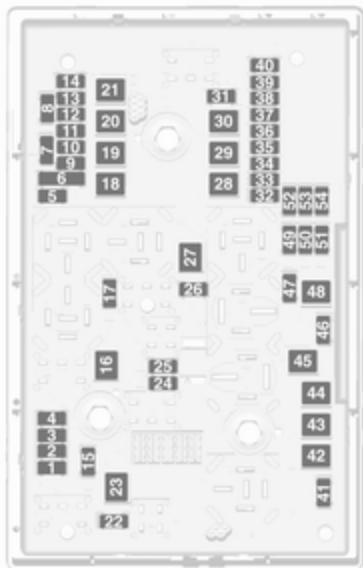


Place the fuse extractor on the various types of fuse from the top or side, and withdraw fuse.

### Engine compartment fuse box



The fuse box is in the front left of the engine compartment. Disengage the cover and fold it upwards until it stops. Remove the cover vertically upwards.



### No. Circuit

- 1 Engine control module
- 2 Lambda sensor
- 3 Fuel injection/Ignition system
- 4 Fuel injection/Ignition system
- 5 -
- 6 Mirror heating/Anti-theft alarm system
- 7 Fan control/Engine control module/Transmission control module
- 8 Lambda sensor/Engine cooling
- 9 Rear window sensor
- 10 Vehicle battery sensor
- 11 Trunk release
- 12 Adaptive forward lighting/Automatic light control
- 13 ABS
- 14 Rear window wiper
- 15 Engine control module

### No. Circuit

- 16 Starter
- 17 Transmission control module
- 18 Heated rear window
- 19 Front power windows
- 20 Rear power windows
- 21 Rear electrical centre
- 22 Left high beam (Halogen)
- 23 Headlamp washer system
- 24 Right low beam (Xenon)
- 25 Left low beam (Xenon)
- 26 Front fog lights
- 27 Diesel fuel heating
- 28 Start stop system
- 29 Electric parking brake
- 30 ABS
- 31 Adaptive cruise control
- 32 Airbag

**No. Circuit**

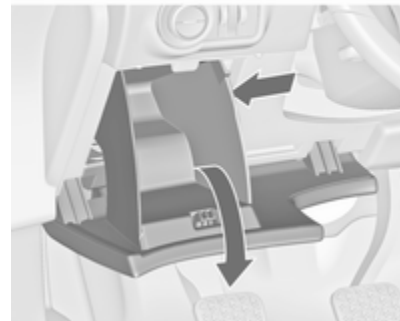
- 33 Adaptive forward lighting/Auto-automatic light control
- 34 Exhaust gas recirculation
- 35 Exterior mirror/Rain sensor
- 36 Climate control
- 37 Canister vent solenoid
- 38 Vacuum pump
- 39 Central control module
- 40 Windscreen washer/Rear window washer system
- 41 Right high beam (Halogen)
- 42 Radiator fan
- 43 Windscreen wiper
- 44 Windscreen wiper
- 45 Radiator fan
- 46 –
- 47 Horn
- 48 Radiator fan

**No. Circuit**

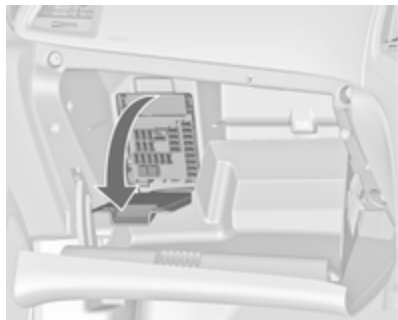
- 49 Fuel pump
- 50 Headlamp levelling/Adaptive forward lighting
- 51 Air shutter
- 52 Auxiliary heater/Diesel engine
- 53 Transmission control module/Engine control module
- 54 Vacuum pump/Instrument panel cluster/Heating ventilation/Air conditioning system

After having changed defective fuses, close the fuse box cover and press until it engages.

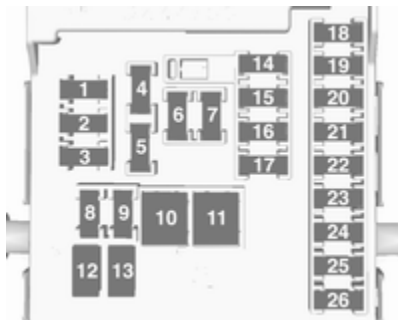
If the fuse box cover is not closed correctly, malfunction may occur.

**Instrument panel fuse box**

In left-hand drive vehicles, the fuse box is behind the storage compartment in the instrument panel. Open the compartment and push it to the left to unlock. Fold the compartment down and remove it.



In right-hand drive vehicles, the fuse box is located behind a cover in the glovebox. Open the glovebox, then open the cover and fold it down.



### No. Circuit

- 1 Displays
- 2 Exterior lights/Body control module
- 3 Exterior lights/Body control module
- 4 Infotainment system
- 5 Infotainment system/Instrument
- 6 Power outlet/Cigarette lighter
- 7 Power outlet
- 8 Left low beam/Body control module
- 9 Right low beam/Body control module/Airbag module
- 10 Door locks/Body control module
- 11 Interior fan
- 12 –
- 13 –
- 14 Diagnostic connector
- 15 Airbag

### No. Circuit

- 16 Power outlet
- 17 Air conditioning system
- 18 Logistics
- 19 Body control module
- 20 Body control module
- 21 Instrument panel cluster/Anti-theft alarm system
- 22 Ignition sensor
- 23 Body control module
- 24 Body control module
- 25 –
- 26 Power outlet load compartment (if no load compartment fuse box) (Sports tourer only)

### Load compartment fuse box

#### 3-door hatchback, 5-door hatchback

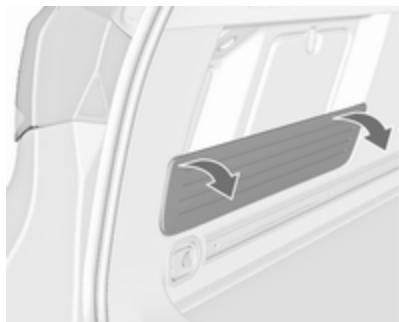
The fuse box is on the left side of the load compartment behind a cover.



Remove the cover.

### Sports tourer

The fuse box is on the left side of the load compartment behind a cover.

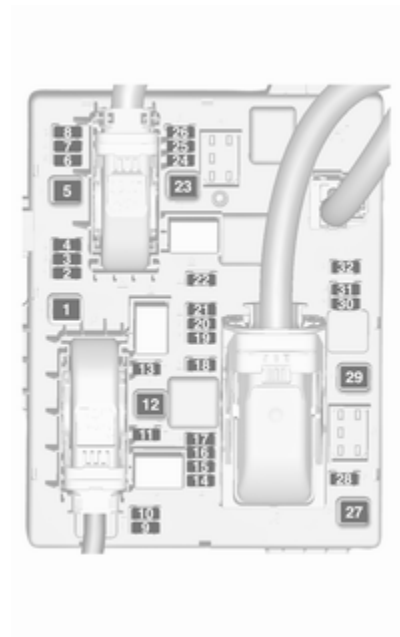


Fold down the blind and remove.



Remove the cover.

### Fuse assignments

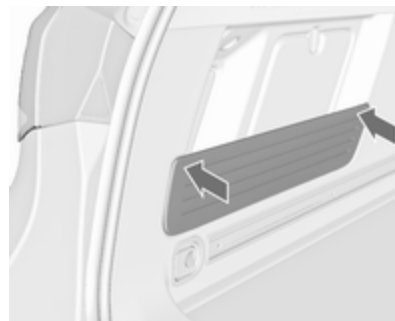


**No. Circuit**

- 1 –
- 2 Trailer outlet
- 3 Parking assist
- 4 –
- 5 –
- 6 –
- 7 Power seat
- 8 –
- 9 –
- 10 –
- 11 Trailer module/Trailer socket
- 12 Trailer module
- 13 Trailer outlet
- 14 Rear seat/Electrical folding
- 15 –
- 16 Interior mirror/Rear view camera

**No. Circuit**

- 17 Power outlet
- 18 –
- 19 Steering wheel heating
- 20 Sunroof
- 21 Heated front seats
- 22 –
- 23 –
- 24 –
- 25 –
- 26 Deactivated logistic mode
- 27 –
- 28 –
- 29 –
- 30 –
- 31 Amplifier/Subwoofer
- 32 Active damping system/Lane departure warning



When assembling press the blind into the rubber grommets to reach full retention force.



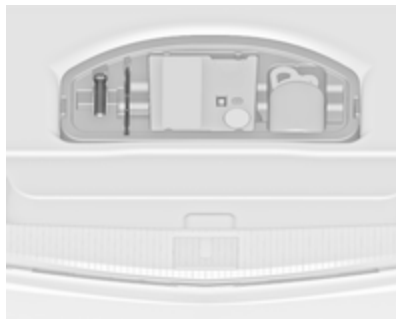
## Vehicle tools

### Tools

#### Vehicles with tyre repair kit

Some tools and the towing eye are located together with the tyre repair kit in a tool box in the load compartment below the floor cover.

#### 3-door and 5-door hatchback



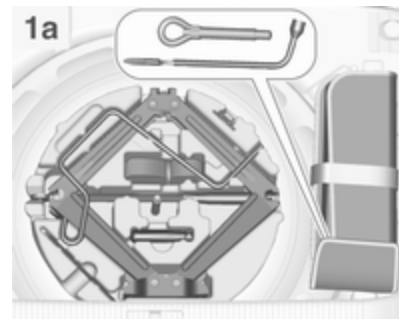
#### Sports Tourer and 4-door saloon



On version with rear carrier system ↻ 63, the tyre repair kit, a screwdriver and the towing eye are located in the drawer under the front passenger seat ↻ 61.

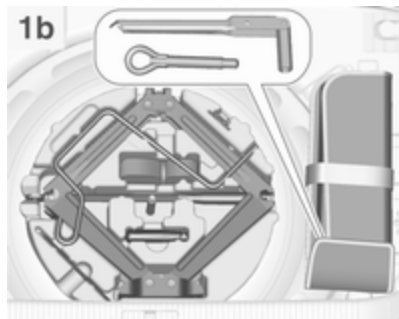
#### Vehicles with spare wheel

#### Variant 1a: 3-door and 5-door hatchback with rigid wheel wrench



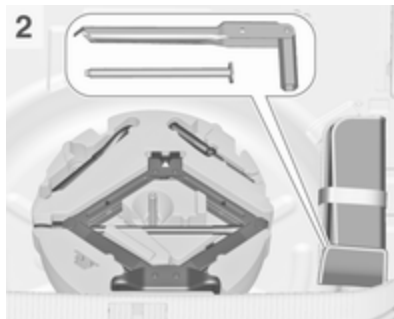
The jack, the tools and a strap for securing a damaged wheel are in the tool box below the spare wheel in the load compartment. The wheel wrench and the towing eye are in the tool bag located in the spare wheel well near the tool box. Spare wheel ↻ 274.

**Variant 1b: 3-door and 5-door hatchback with foldable wheel wrench**



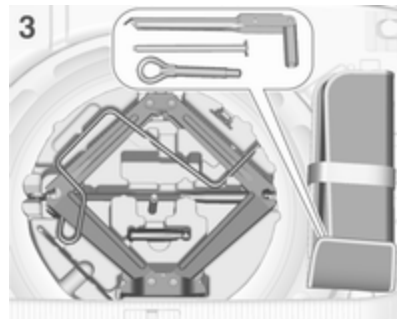
Same content as variant **1a**, but with a foldable wheel wrench instead of the rigid wheel wrench located in the tool bag.

**Variant 2: Sports Tourer**



The jack, the tools and the towing eye are in the tool box below the spare wheel in the load compartment. The wheel wrench and an extension bolt for securing a damaged wheel (only vehicles with temporary spare wheel) are in the tool bag located in the spare wheel well near the tool box. Spare wheel ⇨ 274.

**Variant 3: 4-door saloon**



The jack and the tools are in the tool box below the spare wheel in the load compartment. The wheel wrench, the towing eye and an extension bolt for securing a damaged wheel (only vehicles with temporary spare wheel) are in the tool bag located in the spare wheel well near the tool box. Spare wheel ⇨ 274.

## Wheels and tyres

### Tyre condition, wheel condition

Drive over edges slowly and at right angles if possible. Driving over sharp edges can cause tyre and wheel damage. Do not trap tyres on the kerb when parking.

Regularly check the wheels for damage. Seek the assistance of a workshop in the event of damage or unusual wear.

### Winter tyres

Winter tyres improve driving safety at temperatures below 7 °C and should therefore be fitted on all wheels.

In accordance with country-specific regulations, affix the speed sticker in the driver's field of view.

#### 5-door hatchback, 4-door saloon, Sports tourer

Tyre sizes 205/65 R16 are only suitable as winter tyres.

All engines except A14XER,  
B14XER, B14NEL, B14NET,  
B14NET LPG, B16XER:

Tyre sizes 215/50 R17 are only suitable as winter tyres.

### Tyre designations

E.g. **215/60 R 16 95 H**

- 215** : tyre width, mm
- 60** : cross-section ratio (tyre height to tyre width), %
- R** : belt type: Radial
- RF** : type: RunFlat
- 16** : wheel diameter, inches
- 95** : load index e.g. 95 is equivalent to 690 kg
- H** : speed code letter

Speed code letter:

- Q** : up to 100 mph
- S** : up to 112 mph
- T** : up to 118 mph
- H** : up to 130 mph
- V** : up to 150 mph
- W** : up to 168 mph

### Directional tyres

Fit directional tyres such that they roll in the direction of travel. The rolling direction is indicated by a symbol (e.g. an arrow) on the sidewall.

## Tyre pressure

Check the pressure of cold tyres at least every 14 days and before any long journey. Do not forget the spare wheel. This also applies to vehicles with tyre pressure monitoring system.

Unscrew the valve cap.



Tyre pressure ⇨ 307.

The tyre pressure information label on the front left or right door frame indicates the original equipment tyres and the correspondent tyre pressures.

The tyre pressure data refers to cold tyres. It applies to summer and winter tyres.

Always inflate the spare tyre to the pressure specified for full load.

The ECO tyre pressure serves to achieve the smallest amount of fuel consumption possible.

Incorrect tyre pressures will impair safety, vehicle handling, comfort and fuel economy and will increase tyre wear.

Tyre pressures differ depending on various options. For the correct tyre pressure value, follow the procedure below:

1. Identify the body style.
2. Identify the engine identifier code.  
Engine data ⇨ 293.
3. Identify the respective tyre.

The tyre pressure tables show all possible tyre combinations ⇨ 307.

For the tyres approved for your vehicle, refer to the EEC Certificate of Conformity provided with your vehicle or other national registration documents.

The driver is responsible for correct adjustment of tyre pressure.

**⚠ Warning**

If the pressure is too low, this can result in considerable tyre warm-up and internal damage, leading to tread separation and even to tyre blow-out at high speeds.

If the tyre pressure must be reduced or increased on a vehicle with tyre pressure monitoring system, switch off ignition.

**Tyre pressure monitoring system**

The tyre pressure monitoring system (TPMS) checks the pressure of all four tyres once a minute when vehicle speed exceeds a certain limit.

**Caution**

Tyre pressure monitoring system warns only about low tyre pressure condition and does not replace regular tyre maintenance by the driver.

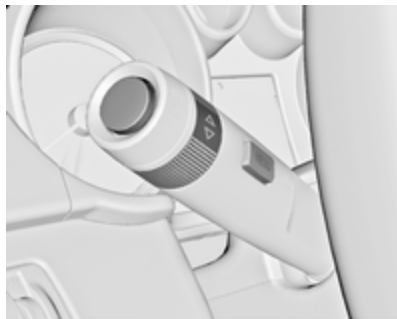
All wheels must be equipped with pressure sensors and the tyres must have the prescribed pressure.


**Notice**

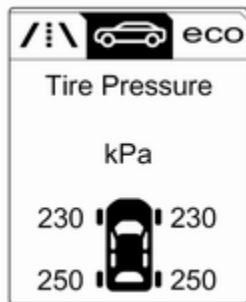
In countries where the tyre pressure monitoring system is legally required, the use of wheels without pressure sensors will invalidate the vehicle tyre approval.

The current tyre pressures can be shown in the **Vehicle Information Menu** in the Driver Information Centre (DIC).

The menu can be selected by the buttons on the turn signal lever.



Press **MENU** to select the **Vehicle Information Menu** .





Turn the adjuster wheel to select the tyre pressure monitoring system.


System status and pressure warnings are displayed by a message with the corresponding tyre flashing in the DIC.


The system considers the tyre temperature for the warnings.




A detected low tyre pressure condition is indicated by control indicator   $\rightarrow$  116.

If  illuminates, stop as soon as possible and inflate the tyres as recommended  $\rightarrow$  307.


If  flashes for 60-90 seconds and then illuminates continuously, there is a fault in the system. Consult a workshop.


After inflating, driving may be required to update the tyre pressure values in the DIC. During this time  may illuminate.

If  illuminates at lower temperatures and extinguishes after some driving, this could be an indicator for approaching a low tyre pressure condition. Check tyre pressure.

Vehicle messages  $\rightarrow$  124.

If the tyre pressure must be reduced or increased, switch off ignition.

Only mount wheels with pressure sensors, otherwise the tyre pressure will not be displayed and  illuminates continuously.

A temporary spare wheel is not equipped with pressure sensors. The tyre pressure monitoring system is not operational for these wheels. Control indicator  illuminates. For the further three wheels the system remains operational.

The use of commercially available liquid tyre repair kits can impair the function of the system. Factory-approved repair kits can be used.

Operating electronic devices or being close to facilities using similar wave frequencies could disrupt the tyre pressure monitoring system.

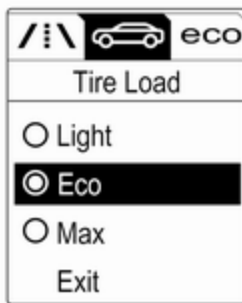
Each time the tyres are replaced, tyre pressure monitoring system sensors must be dismantled and serviced.

For the screwed sensor: replace valve core and sealing ring. For clipped sensor: replace complete valve stem.

### Vehicle loading status

Adjust tyre pressure to load condition according to the tyre information label or tyre pressure chart ↗ 307, and select the appropriate setting in the **Tyre load** menu in the Driver Information Centre (DIC) ↗ 118. This setting is the reference for the tyre pressure warnings.

The menu **Tyre Load** only appears if the vehicle is in a standstill and the parking brake is applied. On vehicles with automatic transmission the selector lever has to be in **P**.



Select:

- **Light** for comfort pressure up to 3 people.
- **Eco** for Eco pressure up to 3 people.
- **Max** for full load.

### TPMS sensor matching process

Each TPMS sensor has a unique identification code. The identification code must be matched to a new wheel position after rotating the wheels or exchanging the complete wheel set and if one or more TPMS sensors were replaced. The TPMS sensor matching process should also

be performed after replacing a spare wheel with a road wheel containing the TPMS sensor.

The malfunction light (⚠) and the warning message or code should go off at the next ignition cycle. The sensors are matched to the wheel positions, using a TPMS relearn tool, in the following order: left side front wheel, right side front wheel, right side rear wheel and left side rear wheel. The turn signal light at the current active position is illuminated until sensor is matched.

Consult your workshop for service or to purchase a relearn tool. There are 2 minutes to match the first wheel position, and 5 minutes overall to match all four wheel positions. If it takes longer, the matching process stops and must be restarted.

The TPMS sensor matching process is:

1. Apply the parking brake; on vehicles with automatic transmission set the selector lever to **P**.
2. Turn the ignition on.

3. Use **MENU** on the turn signal lever to select the **Vehicle Information Menu** in the DIC.
4. Turn the adjuster wheel to scroll to the tyre pressure menu.
5. Press **SET/CLR** to begin the sensor matching process. A message requesting acceptance of the process should display.
6. Press **SET/CLR** again to confirm the selection. The horn sounds twice to signal the receiver is in relearn mode.
7. Start with the left side front wheel.
8. Place the relearn tool against the tyre sidewall, near the valve stem. Then press the button to activate the TPMS sensor. A horn chirp confirms that the sensor identification code has been matched to this wheel position.
9. Proceed to the right side front wheel, and repeat the procedure in Step 8.
10. Proceed to the right side rear wheel, and repeat the procedure in Step 8.
11. Proceed to the left side rear wheel, and repeat the procedure in Step 8. The horn sounds twice to indicate the sensor identification code has been matched to the left side rear tyre, and the TPMS sensor matching process is no longer active.
12. Turn off the ignition.
13. Set all four tyres to the recommended air pressure level as indicated on the tyre pressure label.
14. Ensure the tyre loading status is set according selected pressure ⇨ 118.

### Temperature dependency

The tyre pressure depends on the temperature of the tyre. During driving, tyre temperature and pressure increase. Tyre pressure values provided on the tyre information label and tyre pressure chart are valid for cold tyres, which means at 20 °C. The pressure increases by nearly 10 kPa for a

10 °C temperature increase. This must be considered when warm tyres are checked.

The tyre pressure value displayed in the DIC shows the real tyre pressure. A cooled down tyre will show a decreased value, which does not indicate an air leak.

### Tread depth

Check tread depth at regular intervals.

Tyres should be replaced for safety reasons at a tread depth of 2-3 mm (4 mm for winter tyres).

For safety reasons it is recommended that the tread depth of the tyres on one axle should not vary by more than 2 mm.



The legally permissible minimum tread depth (1.6 mm) has been reached when the tread has worn down as far as one of the tread wear indicators (TWI). Their position is indicated by markings on the sidewall.

If there is more wear at the front than the rear, swap round front wheels and rear wheels periodically. Ensure that the direction of rotation of the wheels is the same as before.

Tyres age, even if they are not used. We recommend tyre replacement every 6 years.

## Changing tyre and wheel size

If tyres of a different size than those fitted at the factory are used, it may be necessary to reprogramme the speedometer as well as the nominal tyre pressure and make other vehicle modifications.

After converting to a different tyre size, have the label with tyre pressures replaced.

### ⚠ Warning

Use of unsuitable tyres or wheels may lead to accidents and will invalidate the vehicle type approval.

## Wheel covers

Wheel covers and tyres that are factory approved for the respective vehicle and comply with all of the relevant wheel and tyre combination requirements must be used.

If the wheel covers and tyres used are not factory approved, the tyres must not have a rim protection ridge.

Wheel covers must not impair brake cooling.

### ⚠ Warning

Use of unsuitable tyres or wheel covers could lead to sudden pressure loss and thereby accidents.

Vehicles with steel wheels: When using locking wheel nuts, do not attach wheel covers.

## Tyre chains



Use tyre chains only on front wheels.



**⚠ Warning**

Damage may lead to tyre blowout.

**5-door hatchback, 4-door saloon,  
Sports tourer**

Always use fine mesh chains that add no more than 10 mm to the tyre tread and the inboard sides (including chain lock).

Tyre chains are only permitted on tyres of size 205/60 R16 and 215/50 R17.

**3-door hatchback**

Tyre chains are permitted on tyres of size 225/55 R17. Always use fine mesh chains that add no more than 10 mm to the tyre tread and the inboard sides (including chain lock).

Tyre chains are also permitted on tyres of size 245/45 R18. Always use fine mesh chains that add no more than 7 mm to the tyre tread and the inboard sides (including chain lock).

**VXR Version**

Tyre chains are permitted on tyres of size 235/45 R18. Always use fine mesh chains that add no more than 10 mm to the tyre tread and the inboard sides (including chain lock).

**General**

The use of tyre chains is not permitted on the temporary spare wheel.

**Tyre repair kit**

Minor damage to the tyre tread can be repaired with the tyre repair kit.

Do not remove foreign bodies from the tyres.

Tyre damage exceeding 4 mm or that is at tyre's sidewall cannot be repaired with the tyre repair kit.

**⚠ Warning**

Do not drive faster than 50 mph.

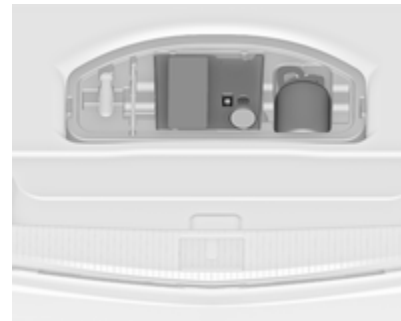
Do not use for a lengthy period.

Steering and handling may be affected.

If you have a flat tyre:

Apply the parking brake and engage first gear, reverse gear or **P**.

The tyre repair kit is in a compartment under the floor cover in the load compartment or, on version with rear carrier system, in the drawer under the passenger seat ↻ 61.



The illustrations show different versions.



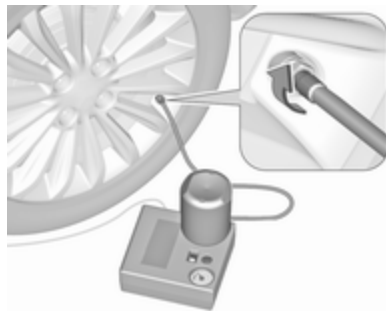
1. Take the tyre repair kit from the compartment.
2. Remove the compressor.



3. Remove the electrical connection cable and air hose from the storage compartments on the underside of the compressor.

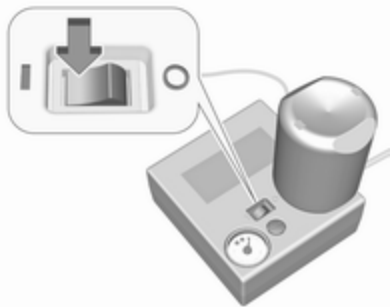


4. Screw the compressor air hose to the connection on the sealant bottle.
5. Fit the sealant bottle into the retainer on the compressor.  
Set the compressor near the tyre in such a way that the sealant bottle is upright.



6. Unscrew valve cap from defective tyre.
7. Screw the filler hose to the tyre valve.
8. The switch on the compressor must be set to **O**.
9. Connect the compressor plug to the power outlet or cigarette lighter socket.

To avoid discharging the battery, we recommend running the engine.



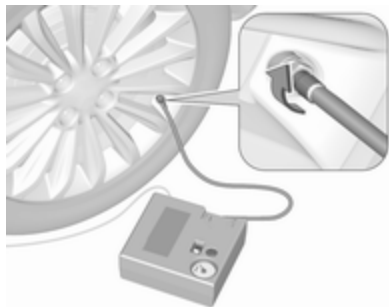
10. Set the rocker switch on the compressor to I. The tyre is filled with sealant.
11. The compressor pressure gauge briefly indicates up to 6 bar whilst the sealant bottle is emptying (approx. 30 seconds). Then the pressure starts to drop.
12. All of the sealant is pumped into the tyre. Then the tyre is inflated.
13. The prescribed tyre pressure should be obtained within 10 minutes. Tyre pressure  $\rightarrow$  307. When the correct pressure is obtained, switch off the compressor.



If the prescribed tyre pressure is not obtained within 10 minutes, remove the tyre repair kit. Move the vehicle one tyre rotation. Reattach the tyre repair kit and continue the filling procedure for 10 minutes. If the prescribed tyre pressure is still not obtained, the tyre is too badly damaged. Seek the assistance of a workshop. Drain excess tyre pressure with the button over the pressure indicator.

Do not run the compressor longer than 10 minutes.

14. Detach the tyre repair kit. Push catch on bracket to remove sealant bottle from bracket. Screw the tyre inflation hose to the free connection of the sealant bottle. This prevents sealant from escaping. Stow tyre repair kit in load compartment.
15. Remove any excess sealant using a cloth.
16. Take the label indicating maximum permitted speed from the sealant bottle and affix in the driver's field of view.
17. Continue driving immediately so that sealant is evenly distributed in the tyre. After driving approx. 6 miles (but no more than 10 minutes), stop and check tyre pressure. Screw compressor air hose directly onto tyre valve and compressor when doing this.



If tyre pressure is more than 1.3 bar, set it to the correct value. Repeat the procedure until there is no more loss of pressure.

If the tyre pressure has fallen below 1.3 bar, the vehicle must not be used. Seek the assistance of a workshop.

18. Stow away tyre repair kit in load compartment.

#### Notice

The driving characteristics of the repaired tyre are severely affected, therefore have this tyre replaced.

If unusual noise is heard or the compressor becomes hot, turn compressor off for at least 30 minutes.

The built-in safety valve opens at a pressure of 102 psi.

Note the expiry date of the kit. After this date its sealing capability is no longer guaranteed. Pay attention to storage information on sealant bottle.

Replace the used sealant bottle. Dispose of the bottle as prescribed by applicable laws.

The compressor and sealant can be used from approx. -30 °C.

The adapters supplied can be used to pump up other items e.g. footballs, air mattresses, inflatable dinghies etc. They are located on the underside of the compressor. To remove, screw on compressor air hose and withdraw adapter.

## Wheel changing

Some vehicles are equipped with a tyre repair kit instead of a spare wheel ↪ 267.

Make the following preparations and observe the following information:

- Park the vehicle on a level, firm and non-skid surface. The front wheels must be in the straight-ahead position.
- Apply the parking brake and engage first gear, reverse gear or P.
- Remove the spare wheel ↪ 274.
- Never change more than one wheel at once.
- Use the jack only to change wheels in case of puncture, not for seasonal winter or summer tyre change.
- The jack is maintenance-free.
- If the ground on which the vehicle is standing is soft, a solid board (max. 1 cm thick) should be placed under the jack.
- Take heavy objects out of the vehicle before jacking up.
- No people or animals may be in the vehicle when it is jacked-up.
- Never crawl under a jacked-up vehicle.

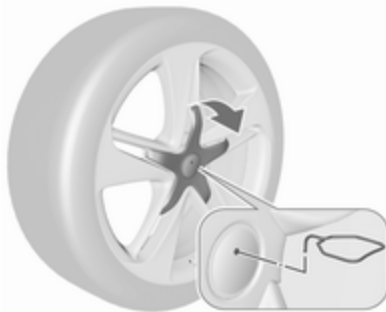
- Do not start the vehicle when it is raised on the jack.
- Clean wheel nuts and thread with a clean cloth before mounting the wheel.

### ⚠ Warning

Do not grease wheel bolt, wheel nut and wheel nut cone.

1. Disengage wheel nut caps with a screwdriver and remove. Pull off the wheel cover. Vehicle tools ⇨ 259.

Alloy wheels: Disengage wheel nut caps with a screwdriver and remove. To protect the wheel, place a soft cloth between the screwdriver and the alloy wheel.



Alloy wheels with centre wheel bolt cap: Disengage centre cap by inserting and pulling the extractor in the recess of the brand emblem, vehicle tools ⇨ 259.

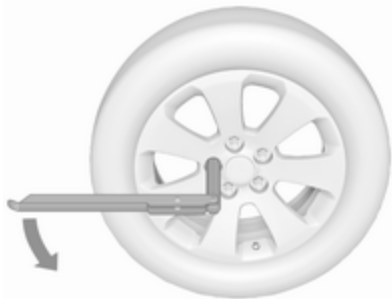
2. Two types of jacks and wheel nut wrenches are possible depending on the version, vehicle tools ⇨ 259.

**Variant 1a with rigid wheel wrench:**



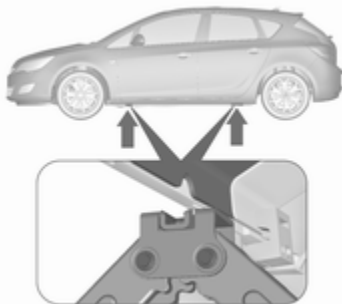
Install the wheel wrench ensuring that it locates securely and loosen each wheel nut by half a turn.

**Variants 1b, 2 and 3 with foldable wheel wrench:**

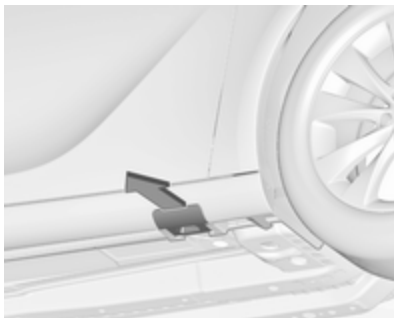


Fold out the wheel wrench and install ensuring that it locates securely and loosen each wheel nut by half a turn.

The wheels might be protected by locking wheel nuts. To loosen these specific nuts first attach the adapter onto the head of the nut before installing the wheel wrench. The adapter is located in the glovebox.

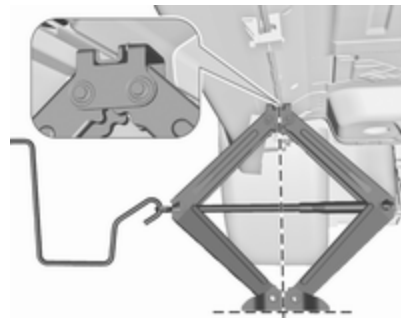


3. Ensure the jack is correctly positioned under the relevant vehicle jacking point.



Some versions have sill panellings with covered vehicle jacking points: pull out the cover at the respective jacking point firstly.

4. **3-door / 5-door hatchback and 4-door saloon, jack variants 1a, 1b and 3, ↗ 259:**



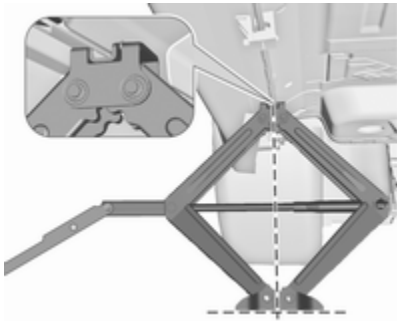
Set the jack to the necessary height. Position it directly below the jacking point in a manner that prevents it from slipping.



Attach jack handle and with the jack correctly aligned rotate

handle until wheel is clear of the ground.

**Sports Tourer, jack variant 2**  
 ↻ 259:



Set the jack to the necessary height. Position it directly below the jacking point in a manner that prevents it from slipping.

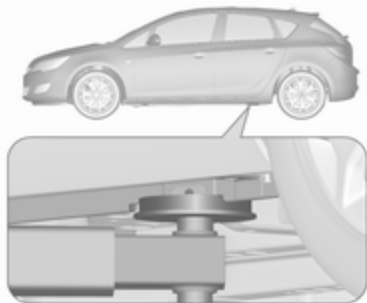


Attach wheel wrench and with the jack correctly aligned rotate wheel wrench until wheel is clear of the ground.

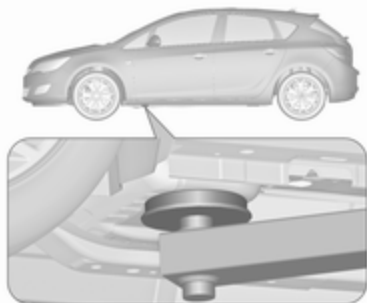
5. Unscrew the wheel nuts.
6. Change the wheel. Spare wheel ↻ 274.
7. Screw on the wheel nuts.
8. Lower the vehicle and remove jack.
9. Install the wheel wrench ensuring that it locates securely and tighten each nut in a crosswise sequence. Tightening torque is 140 Nm.

10. Align the valve hole in the wheel cover with the tyre valve before installing.  
 Install wheel nut caps.  
 Install centre cap on alloy wheels.
  11. Install vehicle jacking point cover on versions with sill panelling.
  12. Stow the replaced wheel ↻ 274, the vehicle tools ↻ 259 and the adapter for the locking wheel nuts ↻ 59.
  13. Check the tyre pressure of the installed tyre and the wheel nut torque as soon as possible.
- Have the defective tyre renewed or repaired as soon as possible.

### Jacking position for lifting platform



Rear arm position of the lifting platform centrally under the recess of the sill.



Front arm position of the lifting platform at the underbody.

### Spare wheel

Some vehicles are equipped with a tyre repair kit instead of a spare wheel.

If mounting a spare wheel, which is different from the other wheels, this wheel might be classified as a temporary spare wheel and the corresponding speed limits apply, even though no label indicates this. Seek the assistance of a workshop to check the applicable speed limit.

The spare wheel has always a steel rim.

#### Caution

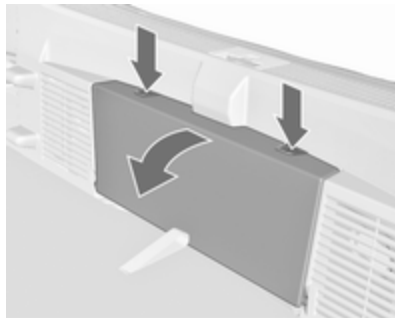
The use of a spare wheel that is smaller than the other wheels or in combination with winter tyres could affect driveability. Have the defective tyre replaced as soon as possible.



The spare wheel is located in the load compartment beneath the floor covering. It is secured with a wing nut.

To remove:

1. Open the floor cover.



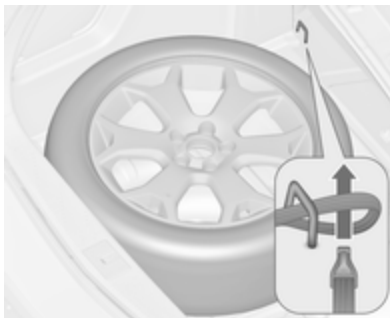


2. Only 3-door hatchback: remove rear storage by pressing both buttons. Fold down cover and extract storage upwards.
3. The spare wheel is secured with a wing nut. Untwist nut, remove conus (only 3-door hatchback) to take out the spare wheel.  
Under the spare wheel there is the box with vehicle tools.
4. When, after a wheel change, no wheel is placed in the spare wheel well, secure the tool box by turning right back the wing nut and close floor cover.

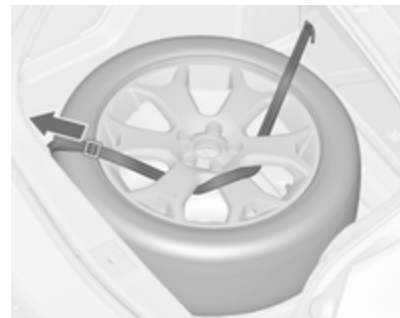
### Stowing a damaged full size wheel in the load compartment, 3-door and 5-door hatchback

The spare wheel well is not designed for other tyre sizes than the spare wheel. A damaged full size wheel must be stowed in the load compartment and secured with a strap. Vehicle tools ⇨ 259. To secure the wheel:

1. Position the wheel outside up close to one sidewall of the load compartment.



2. Place the loop end of the strap through the front lashing eye on the appropriate side.
3. Place the hook end of the strap through the loop and pull it until the strap is fastened securely to the lashing eye.



4. Insert the strap through the spokes of the wheel as shown in the illustration.
5. Mount the hook to the rear lashing eye.
6. Tighten the strap and secure it using the buckle.

#### **⚠ Danger**

Always drive with folded up and engaged rear seat backrests when stowing a damaged full size wheel in the load compartment.

**Stowing a damaged full size wheel in the spare wheel well, Sports Tourer and 4-door saloon**

Vehicles equipped with a full size spare wheel:



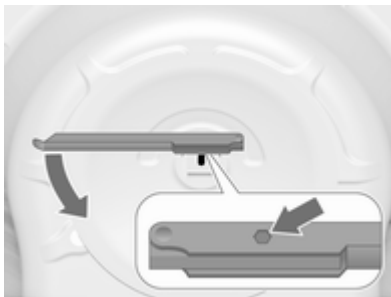
A damaged full size wheel must be stowed outside up in the spare wheel well secured with the wing nut.

The floor cover can be placed on the projecting wheel.

**Vehicles equipped with a temporary spare wheel:**

Secure a damaged full size wheel outside up with the wing nut in the spare wheel well after exchanging the

thread bolt by an extension bolt, placed in the tool bag ⇨ 259. To replace the bolt:



1. Install the hexagon key of the wheel wrench ensuring that it locates securely on the bolt.
2. Turn the wheel wrench anticlockwise to loosen the bolt. Remove the bolt.

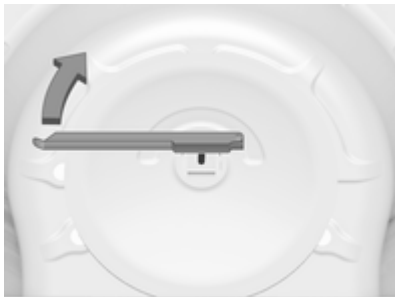
3. Take the extension bolt from the tool bag ⇨ 259 and screw it in hand-tight using the hexagon key of the wheel wrench.
4. Store the tool box and the damaged wheel outside up in the spare wheel well and secure it by turning the wing nut clockwise on the bolt.

The floor cover can be placed on the projecting wheel.

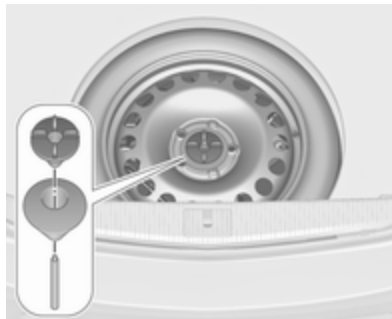
Replace the extension bolt with the short bolt before placing the temporary spare wheel in the well after renewing or repairing the defective wheel.

**Stowing the spare wheel back in the well after replacing the damaged wheel**

1. Open the floor cover, untwist and remove wing nut.  
Only 3-door hatchback: open floor cover, remove rear storage, untwist and remove wing nut and conus.



2. Only Sports tourer and 4-door saloon with temporary spare wheel: replace the extension bolt with the short bolt by using the hexagon key of the wheel wrench.
3. Place the tools in the tool box or the tool bag ↗ 259.
4. Place spare wheel outside up in the wheel well and secure by turning the wing nut right back.



- Only 3-door hatchback: position the excentric conus in the recess of the spare wheel before turning the wing nut right back.
5. Close floor cover and insert rear storage (only 3-door hatchback).

### **⚠ Warning**

Storing a jack, a wheel or other equipment in the load compartment could cause injury if they are not fixed properly. During a sudden stop or a collision, loose equipment could strike someone.

Store jack and tools always in the respective storage compartments and secure them by fixing.

Damaged wheel placed in the load compartment must always be secured by the strap.

### **Temporary spare wheel**

#### **Caution**

The use of a spare wheel that is smaller than the other wheels or in combination with winter tyres could affect driveability. Have the defective tyre replaced as soon as possible.

Only mount one temporary spare wheel. Do not drive faster than 50 mph. Take curves slowly. Do not use for a long period of time.

If your vehicle gets a flat tyre on the rear while towing another vehicle, mount the temporary spare wheel in the front and the full tyre in the rear.

Tyre chains ↗ 266.

## Spare wheel with directional tyre

Fit directional tyres such that they roll in the direction of travel. The rolling direction is indicated by a symbol (e.g. an arrow) on the sidewall.

The following applies to tyres fitted opposing the rolling direction:

- Driveability may be affected. Have the defective tyre renewed or repaired as soon as possible.
- Drive particularly carefully on wet and snow-covered road surfaces.

## Jump starting

Do not start with quick charger.

A vehicle with a discharged vehicle battery can be started using jump leads and the vehicle battery of another vehicle.

### Warning

Be extremely careful when starting with jump leads. Any deviation from the following instructions can lead to injuries or damage caused by battery explosion or damage to the electrical systems of both vehicles.

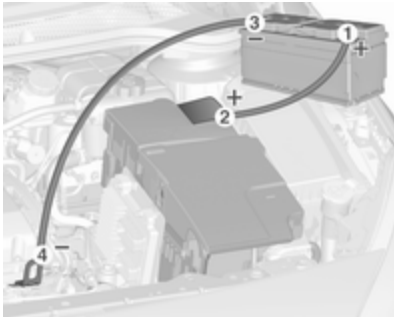
### Warning

Avoid contact of the battery with eyes, skin, fabrics and painted surfaces. The fluid contains sulphuric acid which can cause injuries and damage in the event of direct contact.

- Never expose the vehicle battery to naked flames or sparks.

- A discharged vehicle battery can already freeze at a temperature of 0 °C. Defrost the frozen vehicle battery before connecting jump leads.
- Wear eye protection and protective clothing when handling a vehicle battery.
- Use a booster vehicle battery with the same voltage (12 Volts). Its capacity (Ah) must not be much less than that of the discharged vehicle battery.
- Use jump leads with insulated terminals and a cross section of at least 16 mm<sup>2</sup> (25 mm<sup>2</sup> for diesel engines).
- Do not disconnect the discharged vehicle battery from the vehicle.
- Switch off all unnecessary electrical consumers.
- Do not lean over the vehicle battery during jump starting.
- Do not allow the terminals of one lead to touch those of the other lead.

- The vehicles must not come into contact with each other during the jump starting process.
- Apply the parking brake, transmission in neutral, automatic transmission in **P**.
- Open the positive terminal protection caps of both vehicle batteries.



Lead connection order:

1. Connect the red lead to the positive terminal of the booster vehicle battery.
2. Connect the other end of the red lead to the positive terminal of the discharged vehicle battery.

3. Connect the black lead to the negative terminal of the booster vehicle battery.
4. Connect the other end of the black lead to a vehicle grounding point, such as the engine block or an engine mounting bolt. Connect as far away from the discharged vehicle battery as possible, however at least 60 cm.

Route the leads so that they cannot catch on rotating parts in the engine compartment.

To start the engine:

1. Start the engine of the vehicle providing the jump.
2. After 5 minutes, start the other engine. Start attempts should be made for no longer than 15 seconds at an interval of 1 minute.
3. Allow both engines to idle for approx. 3 minutes with the leads connected.

4. Switch on electrical consumers (e.g. headlights, heated rear window) of the vehicle receiving the jump start.
5. Reverse above sequence exactly when removing leads.

## Towing

### Towing the vehicle



Insert a screwdriver in the slot at the lower part of the cap. Release the cap by carefully moving the screwdriver downwards.

The towing eye is stowed with the vehicle tools ⇨ 259.



Screw in the towing eye as far as it will go until it stops in a horizontal position.

Attach a tow rope – or better still a tow rod – to the towing eye.

The towing eye must only be used for towing and not for recovering the vehicle.

Switch on ignition to release steering wheel lock and to permit operation of brake lights, horn and windscreen wiper.

Transmission in neutral.

### Caution

Drive slowly. Do not drive jerkily. Excessive tractive force can damage the vehicle.

When the engine is not running, considerably more force is needed to brake and steer.

To prevent the entry of exhaust gases from the towing vehicle, switch on the air recirculation and close the windows.

Vehicles with automatic transmission: The vehicle must be towed facing forwards, not faster than 50 mph nor further than 60 miles. In all other cases and when the transmission is defective, the front axle must be raised off the ground.

Seek the assistance of a workshop.

After towing, unscrew the towing eye.

Insert cap at the top and engage downwards.

## Towing another vehicle



Insert a screwdriver in the slot at the lower bend of the cap. Release the cap by carefully moving the screwdriver downwards.

The towing eye is stowed with the vehicle tools ⇨ 259.



Screw in the towing eye as far as it will go until it stops in a horizontal position.

The lashing eye at the rear underneath the vehicle must never be used as a towing eye.

Attach a tow rope – or even better a tow bar – to the towing eye.

The towing eye must only be used for towing and not for recovering a vehicle.

### Caution

Drive slowly. Do not drive jerkily. Excessive tractive force can damage the vehicle.

After towing, unscrew the towing eye. Insert cap at the top and engage downwards.

## Appearance care

### Exterior care

#### Locks

The locks are lubricated at the factory using a high quality lock cylinder grease. Use de-icing agent only when absolutely necessary, as this has a degreasing effect and impairs lock function. After using a de-icing agent, have the locks regreased by a workshop.

#### Washing

The paintwork of your vehicle is exposed to environmental influences. Wash and wax your vehicle regularly. When using automatic vehicle washes, select a programme that includes waxing.

Bird droppings, dead insects, resin, pollen and the like should be cleaned off immediately, as they contain aggressive constituents which can cause paint damage.

If using a vehicle wash, comply with the vehicle wash manufacturer's instructions. The windscreen wiper and rear window wiper must be switched off. Remove antenna and external accessories such as roof racks etc.

If you wash your vehicle by hand, make sure that the insides of the wheel housings are also thoroughly rinsed out.

Clean edges and folds on opened doors and the bonnet as well as the areas they cover.

Clean bright metal mouldings with a cleaning solution approved for aluminium to avoid damages.

#### Caution

Always use a cleaning agent with a pH value of four to nine.

Do not use cleaning agents on hot surfaces.

Have the door hinges of all doors greased by a workshop.

Do not clean the engine compartment with a steam-jet or high-pressure jet cleaner.

On vehicles with emblem touchpad: when cleaning with a high-pressure jet cleaner ensure a minimum distance of 30 cm when working around the tailgate to prevent unintended unlocking.

Thoroughly rinse and leather-off the vehicle. Rinse leather frequently. Use separate leathers for painted and glass surfaces: remnants of wax on the windows will impair vision.

#### Exterior lights

Headlight and other light covers are made of plastic. Do not use any abrasive or caustic agents, do not use an ice scraper, and do not clean them dry.

#### Polishing and waxing

Wax the vehicle regularly (at the latest when water no longer beads). Otherwise, the paintwork will dry out.



Polishing is necessary only if the paint has become dull or if solid deposits have become attached to it.

Paintwork polish with silicone forms a protective film, making waxing unnecessary.

Plastic body parts must not be treated with wax or polishing agents.

### **Windows and windscreen wiper blades**

Use a soft lint-free cloth or chamois leather together with window cleaner and insect remover.

When cleaning the rear window from inside, always wipe in parallel to the heating element to prevent damage.

For mechanical removal of ice, use a sharp-edged ice scraper. Press the scraper firmly against the glass so that no dirt can get under it and scratch the glass.

Remove dirt residues from smearing wiper blades by using a soft cloth and window cleaner. Also make sure to remove any residues such as wax, insect residues and similar from the window.

Ice residues, pollution and continuous wiping on dry windows will damage or even destroy the wiper blades.

### **Sunroof**

Never clean with solvents or abrasive agents, fuels, aggressive media (e.g. paint cleaner, acetone-containing solutions etc.), acidic or highly alkaline media or abrasive pads. Do not apply wax or polishing agents to the sunroof.

### **Glass panel**

Never clean with solvents or abrasive agents, fuels, aggressive media (e.g. paint cleaner, acetone-containing solutions etc.), acidic or highly alkaline media or abrasive pads. Do not apply wax or polishing agents to the glass panel.

### **Wheels and tyres**

Do not use high-pressure jet cleaners.

Clean rims with a pH-neutral wheel cleaner.

Rims are painted and can be treated with the same agents as the body.

### **Paintwork damage**

Rectify minor paintwork damage with a touch-up pen before rust forms. Have more extensive damage or rust areas repaired by a workshop.

### **Underbody**

Some areas of the vehicle underbody have a PVC undercoating while other critical areas have a durable protective wax coating.

After the underbody is washed, check the underbody and have it waxed if necessary.

Bitumen/rubber materials could damage the PVC coating. Have underbody work carried out by a workshop.

Before and after winter, wash the underbody and have the protective wax coating checked.

## Liquid gas system

**⚠ Danger**

Liquid gas is heavier than air and can collect in sink points.

Take care when performing work at the underbody in a pit.

For painting work and when using a drying booth at a temperature above 60 °C, the liquid gas tank must be removed.

Do not make any modifications to the liquid gas system.

## Towing equipment

Do not clean the coupling ball bar with a steam-jet or high-pressure jet cleaner.

## Rear carrier system

Clean the rear carrier system with a steam-jet or high-pressure jet cleaner at least once a year.

Operate the rear carrier system periodically if not in regular use, in particular during winter.

## Air shutter

Clean the shutter system in the front bumper to maintain correct functionality.

## Interior care

### Interior and upholstery

Only clean the vehicle interior, including the instrument panel fascia and panelling, with a dry cloth or interior cleaner.

Clean the leather upholstery with clear water and a soft cloth. In case of heavy soiling, use leather care.

The instrument cluster and the displays should only be cleaned using a soft damp cloth. If necessary use a weak soap solution.

Clean fabric upholstery with a vacuum cleaner and brush. Remove stains with an upholstery cleaner.

Clothing fabrics may not be colourfast. This could cause visible discolourations, especially on light-

coloured upholstery. Removable stains and discolourations should be cleaned as soon as possible.

Clean seat belts with lukewarm water or interior cleaner.

**Caution**

Close Velcro fasteners as open Velcro fasteners on clothing could damage seat upholstery.

The same applies to clothing with sharp-edged objects, like zips or belts or studded jeans.

## Plastic and rubber parts

Plastic and rubber parts can be cleaned with the same cleaner as used to clean the body. Use interior cleaner if necessary. Do not use any other agent. Avoid solvents and petrol in particular. Do not use high-pressure jet cleaners.

# Service and maintenance

**General information** ..... 285  
 Service information ..... 285

**Recommended fluids, lubricants and parts** ..... 286  
 Recommended fluids and lubricants ..... 286

## General information

### Service information

In order to ensure economical and safe vehicle operation and to maintain the value of your vehicle, it is of vital importance that all maintenance work is carried out at the proper intervals as specified.

The detailed, up-to-date service schedule for your vehicle is available at the workshop.

Service display ⇨ 108.

### European service intervals

Maintenance of your vehicle is required every 20,000 miles or after 1 year, whichever occurs first, unless otherwise indicated in the service display.

A shorter service interval can be valid for severe driving behaviour, e.g. for taxis and police vehicles.

The European service intervals are valid for the following countries:

Andorra, Austria, Belgium, Bosnia-Herzegovina, Bulgaria, Croatia, Cyprus, Czech Republic, Denmark, Estonia, Finland, France, Germany, Greece, Greenland, Hungary, Iceland, Ireland, Italy, Latvia, Liechtenstein, Lithuania, Luxembourg, Macedonia, Malta, Monaco, Montenegro, Netherlands, Norway, Poland, Portugal, Romania, San Marino, Serbia, Slovakia, Slovenia, Spain, Sweden, Switzerland, United Kingdom.

Service display ⇨ 108.

### International service intervals

Maintenance of your vehicle is required every 10,000 miles or after 1 year, whichever occurs first, unless otherwise indicated in the service display.

The international service intervals are valid for the countries which are not listed in the European service intervals.

Service display ⇨ 108.

## Confirmations

Confirmation of service is recorded in the Service and Warranty Booklet. The date and mileage is completed with the stamp and signature of the servicing workshop.

Make sure that the Service and Warranty Booklet is completed correctly as continuous proof of service is essential if any warranty or goodwill claims are to be met, and is also a benefit when selling the vehicle.

## Service interval with remaining engine oil life duration

The service interval is based on several parameters depending on usage.

The service display lets you know when to change the engine oil.

Service display ⇨ 108.

## Recommended fluids, lubricants and parts

### Recommended fluids and lubricants

Only use products that meet the recommended specifications. Damage resulting from the use of products not in line with these specifications will not be covered by the warranty.

#### Warning

Operating materials are hazardous and could be poisonous. Handle with care. Pay attention to information given on the containers.

### Engine oil

Engine oil is identified by its quality and its viscosity. Quality is more important than viscosity when selecting which engine oil to use. The oil quality ensures e.g. engine cleanliness, wear protection and oil

aging control, whereas viscosity grade gives information on the oil's thickness over a temperature range.

Dexos is the newest engine oil quality that provides optimum protection for gasoline and diesel engines. If it is unavailable, engine oils of other listed qualities must be used.

Recommendations for gasoline engines are also valid for Compressed Natural Gas (CNG), Liquefied Petroleum Gas (LPG) and Ethanol (E85) fuelled engines.

Select the appropriate engine oil based on its quality and on the minimum ambient temperature ⇨ 290.

### Topping up engine oil

Engine oils of different manufacturers and brands can be mixed as long as they comply with the required engine oil quality and viscosity.

Use of engine oil with only ACEA A1/B1 or only A5/B5 quality is prohibited, since it can cause long-term engine damage under certain operating conditions.

Select the appropriate engine oil based on its quality and on the minimum ambient temperature  
↻ 290.

### **Additional engine oil additives**

The use of additional engine oil additives could cause damage and invalidate the warranty.

### **Engine oil viscosity grades**

The SAE viscosity grade gives information of the thickness of the oil.

Multigrade oil is indicated by two figures, e.g. SAE 5W-30. The first figure, followed by a W, indicates the low temperature viscosity and the second figure the high temperature viscosity.

Select the appropriate viscosity grade depending on the minimum ambient temperature ↻ 290.

All of the recommended viscosity grades are suitable for high ambient temperatures.

### **Coolant and antifreeze**

Use only organic acid type-long life coolant (LLC) antifreeze approved for the vehicle. Consult a workshop.

The system is factory filled with coolant designed for excellent corrosion protection and frost protection down to approx. -28 °C. In northern countries with very low temperatures the factory filled coolant provides frost protection down to approx. -37 °C. This concentration should be maintained all year round.

The use of additional coolant additives that intend to give additional corrosion protection or seal against minor leaks can cause function problems. Liability for consequences resulting from the use of additional coolant additives will be rejected.

### **Brake and clutch fluid**

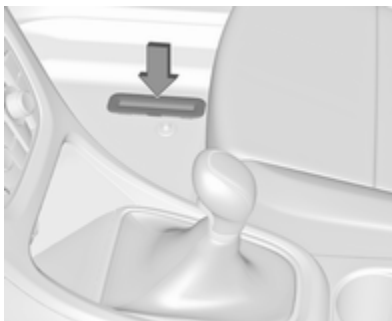
Over time, brake fluid absorbs moisture which will reduce braking effectiveness. The brake fluid should therefore be replaced at the specified interval.

## Technical data

<b>Vehicle identification</b> .....	<b>288</b>
Vehicle Identification Number ..	288
Identification plate .....	288
Engine identification .....	289
<b>Vehicle data</b> .....	<b>290</b>
Recommended fluids and lubricants .....	290
Engine data .....	293
Performance .....	296
Vehicle weight .....	300
Vehicle dimensions .....	304
Capacities .....	305
Tyre pressures .....	307

## Vehicle identification

### Vehicle Identification Number



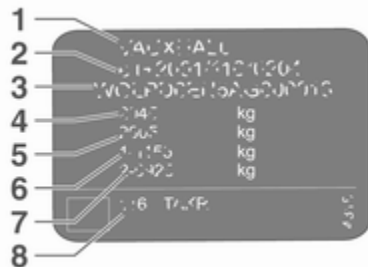
The Vehicle Identification Number may be stamped on the identification plate and on the floor pan, under the floor covering, visible under a cover.

The Vehicle Identification Number may be embossed on the instrument panel, visible through the windscreen, or in the engine compartment on the right body panel.

## Identification plate



The identification plate is located on the front left or right door frame.



Information on identification label:

- 1 : manufacturer
- 2 : type approval number
- 3 : vehicle identification number
- 4 : permissible gross vehicle weight rating in kg
- 5 : permissible gross train weight in kg
- 6 : maximum permissible front axle load in kg
- 7 : maximum permissible rear axle load in kg
- 8 : vehicle-specific or country-specific data

The combined total of front and rear axle loads must not exceed the permissible gross vehicle weight. For example, if the front axle is bearing its maximum permissible load, the rear axle can only bear a load that is equal to the gross vehicle weight minus the front axle load.

The technical data is determined in accordance with European Community standards. We reserve the right to make modifications. Specifications in the vehicle documents always have priority over those given in this manual.

## Engine identification

The technical data tables show the engine identifier code. Engine data ⇨ 293.

To identify the respective engine, refer to the engine power in the EEC Certificate of Conformity provided with your vehicle or other national registration documents.

## Vehicle data

### Recommended fluids and lubricants

#### European service schedule

#### Required engine oil quality

All European countries with European service interval ⇨ 285

Engine oil quality	Petrol engines (including CNG, LPG, E85)	Diesel engines
dexos 1	–	–
dexos 2	✓	✓

In case dexos quality is unavailable you may use max. 1 litre engine oil quality ACEA C3 once between each oil change.

#### Engine oil viscosity grades

All European countries with European service interval ⇨ 285

Ambient temperature	Petrol and diesel engines
down to -25 °C	SAE 5W-30 or SAE 5W-40
below -25 °C	SAE 0W-30 or SAE 0W-40



**International service schedule**
**Required engine oil quality**
**All countries with international service interval ⇨ 285**

Engine oil quality	Petrol engines (including CNG, LPG, E85)	Diesel engines
<b>dexos 1</b> (if available)	✓	–
<b>dexos 2</b>	✓	✓

In case dexos quality is unavailable you may use the oil qualities listed below:

**All countries with international service interval ⇨ 285**

Engine oil quality	Petrol engines (including CNG, LPG, E85)	Diesel engines
GM-LL-A-025	✓	–
GM-LL-B-025	–	✓

**All countries with international service interval ⇨ 285**

Engine oil quality	Petrol engines (including CNG, LPG, E85)	Diesel engines
ACEA A3/B3	✓	–
ACEA A3/B4	✓	✓

## All countries with international service interval ⇨ 285

ACEA C3	✓	✓
API SM	✓	-
API SN resource conserving	✓	-

## Engine oil viscosity grades

## All countries with international service interval ⇨ 285

Ambient temperature	Petrol and diesel engines
down to -25 °C	SAE 5W-30 or SAE 5W-40
below -25 °C	SAE 0W-30 or SAE 0W-40
down to -20 °C	SAE 10W-30 <sup>1)</sup> or SAE 10W-40 <sup>1)</sup>

1) Permitted, but usage of SAE 5W-30 or SAE 5W-40 with dexos quality is recommended.

## Engine data

Sales designation	1.4	1.4	1.4	1.6	1.6	1.6	1.6
Engine identifier code	A14XER, B14NEL B14XER	B14NET	LPG, B16XER B14NET	A16XHT	B16SHL	B16SHT	
Number of cylinders	4	4	4	4	4	4	4
Piston displacement [cm <sup>3</sup> ]	1398	1364	1364	1598	1598	1598	1598
Engine power [kW]	74	88	103	85	125	125	147
at rpm	6000	4200-6000	4900-6000	6000	6000	4750-6000	5500
Torque [Nm]	130	200	200	155	260	260	280
at rpm	4000	1850-4200	1850-4900	4000	1650-3200	1650-4500	1650-5000
Fuel type	Petrol	Petrol	Petrol/LPG	Petrol	Petrol	Petrol	Petrol
Octane rating RON							
recommended	95	95	95	95	98	98	98
possible	98	98	98	98	95	95	95
possible	91	91	91	91	91	91	91
Gas	–	–	LPG	–	–	–	–
Engine oil consumption [l/1000 km] 2)	0.6	0.6	0.6	0.6	0.6	0.6	0.6

2) Maximum value.

## 294 Technical data

<b>Sales designation</b>	<b>1.8</b>	<b>2.0 VXR</b>	<b>1.3</b>	<b>1.6</b>	<b>1.7</b>	<b>1.7</b>	<b>1.6</b>
<b>Engine identifier code</b>	<b>A18XER</b>	<b>B20NFT</b>	<b>A13DTE</b>	<b>B16DTH</b>	<b>A17DTN</b>	<b>A17DTC</b>	<b>B16DTL</b>
Number of cylinders	4	4	4	4	4	4	4
Piston displacement [cm <sup>3</sup> ]	1796	1998	1248	1598	1686	1686	1598
Engine power [kW]	103	206	70	100	74	81	81
at rpm	6300	5300	4000	3500-4000	4000	4000	3500
Torque [Nm]	175	400	190	320	260	280	300
at rpm	3800	2400-4800	1750-3250	2000	1750-2500	1750-2500	1750-2000
Fuel type	Petrol	Petrol	Diesel	Diesel	Diesel	Diesel	Diesel
Octane rating RON							
recommended	95	98					
possible	98	95					
possible	91	91					
Engine oil consumption [l/1000 km] <sup>2)</sup>	0.6	0.6	0.6	0.6	0.6	0.6	0.6

2) Maximum value.

Sales designation	1.7	2.0 Turbo	2.0 Turbo	2.0 Turbo
Engine identifier code	A17DTS	A20DTH	A20DTH	A20DTR
Number of cylinders	4	4	4	4
Piston displacement [cm <sup>3</sup> ]	1686	1956	1956	1956
Engine power [kW]	96	121/117 <sup>3)</sup>	96	143
at rpm	4000	4000	4000	4000
Torque [Nm]	300	350	300	400
at rpm	2000-2500	1750-2500	1750-2500	1750-2500
Fuel type	Diesel	Diesel	Diesel	Diesel
Engine oil consumption [l/1000 km] <sup>2)</sup>	0.6	0.6	0.6	0.6

2) Maximum value.

3) Detuned version.

## Performance

### 3-door hatchback

Engine	A14XER	B14NEL	B14NET	A16XHT	B16SHT	B16SHL
Maximum speed <sup>4)</sup> [mph]						
Manual transmission	111 <sup>5)</sup>	120	125	136	143	–
Automatic transmission	–	–	124	–	–	134

4) The maximum speed indicated is achievable at kerb weight (without driver) plus 200 kg payload. Optional equipment could reduce the specified maximum speed of the vehicle.

5) 4th gear.

Engine	A18XER	B20NFT	B16DTH	B16DTL	A20DTH 121 kW	A20DTH 96 kW	A20DTR
Maximum speed <sup>4)</sup> [mph]							
Manual transmission	124	155	123	113	134	– <sup>6)</sup>	140
Automatic transmission	–	–	–	–	131	–	–

4) The maximum speed indicated is achievable at kerb weight (without driver) plus 200 kg payload. Optional equipment could reduce the specified maximum speed of the vehicle.

6) Value was not available at time of printing.

**5-door hatchback**

Engine	B14NEL	B14NET LPG	B14NET	B14XER	B16XER
Maximum speed <sup>4)</sup> [mph]					
Manual transmission	120	126	126	111	118
Automatic transmission	–	–	124	–	114

4) The maximum speed indicated is achievable at kerb weight (without driver) plus 200 kg payload. Optional equipment could reduce the specified maximum speed of the vehicle.

Engine	B16SHL	A16XHT	A13DTE	B16DTH	B16DTL
Maximum speed <sup>4)</sup> [mph]					
Manual transmission	137	137	109	124	114
Automatic transmission	132	132	–	–	–

4) The maximum speed indicated is achievable at kerb weight (without driver) plus 200 kg payload. Optional equipment could reduce the specified maximum speed of the vehicle.

Engine	A17DTC	A17DTS	A20DTH	A20DTR
Maximum speed <sup>4)</sup> [mph]				
Manual transmission	116	123	134	140
Automatic transmission	–	–	131	–

4) The maximum speed indicated is achievable at kerb weight (without driver) plus 200 kg payload. Optional equipment could reduce the specified maximum speed of the vehicle.

## 4-door saloon

Engine	B14XER	B14NET	B14NET LPG	B16XER	A16XHT
Maximum speed <sup>4)</sup> [mph]					
Manual transmission	114 <sup>5)</sup>	129	126	120	138
Automatic transmission	–	127	–	115	133

4) The maximum speed indicated is achievable at kerb weight (without driver) plus 200 kg payload. Optional equipment could reduce the specified maximum speed of the vehicle.

5) 4th gear.

Engine	A13DTE	B16DTH	B16DTL	B16SHL
Maximum speed <sup>4)</sup> [mph]				
Manual transmission	112	127	118	–
Automatic transmission	–	–	–	133

4) The maximum speed indicated is achievable at kerb weight (without driver) plus 200 kg payload. Optional equipment could reduce the specified maximum speed of the vehicle.



**Sports tourer**

<b>Engine</b>	<b>B14XER</b>	<b>B14NEL</b>	<b>B14NET LPG</b>	<b>B14NET</b>	<b>B16XER</b>	<b>B16SHL</b>
Maximum speed [mph] <sup>4)</sup>						
Manual transmission	109	118	124	124	115	137
Automatic transmission	–	–	–	123	112	131

4) The maximum speed indicated is achievable at kerb weight (without driver) plus 200 kg payload. Optional equipment could reduce the specified maximum speed of the vehicle.

<b>Engine</b>	<b>A13DTE</b>	<b>B16DTH</b>	<b>B16DTL</b>	<b>A17DTN</b>	<b>A20DTH</b>	<b>A20DTR</b>
Maximum speed <sup>4)</sup> [mph]						
Manual transmission	108	124	114	113	132	139
Automatic transmission	–	–	–	–	129	–

4) The maximum speed indicated is achievable at kerb weight (without driver) plus 200 kg payload. Optional equipment could reduce the specified maximum speed of the vehicle.

## Vehicle weight

### Kerb weight, basic model without any optional equipment

3-door hatchback	Engine	Manual transmission	Automatic transmission
without/with air conditioning [kg]	A14XER	1393/1408	–
	B14NEL	–/1437	–
	B14NET	–/1437	–/1471
	A16XHT	–/1503	–
	B16SHT	–/1503	–
	B16SHL	–	–/1503
	A18XER	–/1437	–
	B20NFT	–/1550	–
	B16DTH	1503/1518	–
	B16DTL	1503/1518	–
	A20DTH	–/1550	–/1571
	A20DTR	–/1571	–

Optional equipment and accessories increase the kerb weight.

Loading information ⇨ 95.

**Kerb weight, basic model without any optional equipment**

5-door hatchback	Engine	Manual transmission	Automatic transmission
without/with air conditioning [kg]	B14XER	1373/1388	–
	B14NEL	1393/1408	–
	B14NET	1393/1408	–/1453
	B14NET LPG	1503/1518	–/1453
	B16XER	1393/1408	–/1443
	A16XHT	–/1503	–/1503
	A13DTE	1393/1408	–
without/with air conditioning [kg]	B16DTH	1488/1503	–
	B16DTL	1488/1503	–
	B16SHL	–/1503	–/1503
	A17DTC	1503/1518	–
	A17DTS	1503/1518	–
	A20DTH	1503/1518	–/1590
	A20DTR	–/1571	–

Optional equipment and accessories increase the kerb weight.

Loading information ⇨ 95.

## Kerb weight, basic model without any optional equipment

4-door saloon	Engine	Manual transmission	Automatic transmission
without/with air conditioning [kg]	B14XER	1393/1405	–
	B14NET	1437/1449	–/1483
	B14NET LPG	1503/1515	–
	B16XER	1393/1405	–/1449
	A16XHT	–/1503	–/1503
	A13DTE	1471/1483	–
	B16SHL	–	–/1503
	B16DTH	1491/1503	–
	B16DTL	1491/1503	–

Optional equipment and accessories increase the kerb weight.

Loading information ⇨ 95.

**Kerb weight, basic model without any optional equipment**

<b>Sports tourer</b>	<b>Engine</b>	<b>Manual transmission</b>	<b>Automatic transmission</b>
<b>without/with air conditioning</b> [kg]	B14XER	1393/1408	–
	B14NEL	1437/1452	–
	B14NET	1437/1452	–/1503
	B14NET LPG	1503/1518	–
	B16XER	1437/1452	–/1503
	B16SHL	–/1550	–/1571
	A13DTE	1471/1486	–
	B16DTH	1503/1518	–
	B16DTL	1503/1518	–
<b>without/with air conditioning</b> [kg]	A17DTN	1550/1565	–
	A20DTH	1550/1565	–/1613
	A20DTR	–/1613	–

Optional equipment and accessories increase the kerb weight.

Loading information ⇨ 95.

**Vehicle dimensions**

	<b>3-door hatchback</b>	<b>5-door hatchback</b>	<b>4-door saloon</b>	<b>Sports tourer</b>
Length [mm]	4466	4419	4658	4698
Width without exterior mirrors [mm]	1840	1814	1814	1814
Width with two exterior mirrors [mm]	2020	2013	2013	2013
Height (without antenna) [mm]	1482	1510	1500	1535
Length of load compartment floor [mm]	855	836	1084	1069
Length of load compartment with folded rear seats [mm]	1617	1549	1778	1835
Load compartment width [mm]	980	1027	976	1026
Load compartment height [mm]	512	554	546	721
Wheelbase [mm]	2695	2685	2685	2685
Turning circle diameter [m]	11.4	11.5	11.5	11.5

## Capacities

### Engine oil

Engine	A14XER, B14XER, B14NEL, B14NET LPG, B14NET	B16XER, A18XER	A16XHT, B16SHT, B16SHL	B20NFT
including Filter [l]	4.0	4.5	5.5	6.0
between MIN and MAX [l]	1.0	1.0	1.0	1.0

Engine	A13DTE ecoFlex	B16DTH, B16DTL	A17DTC, A17DTN, A17DTS	A20DTH, A20DTR
including Filter [l]	3.5	5.0	5.4	4.5
between MIN and MAX [l]	1.0	1.0	1.0	1.0

## 306 Technical data

---

### Fuel tank

Petrol/diesel, refilling quantity [l]

56<sup>7)</sup>

LPG, refilling quantity [l]

34<sup>8)</sup>

---

7) A13DTE diesel engine in combination with special equipment: 46 litres.

8) Sports tourer: 33 litres.



## Tyre pressures

Tyre pressures differ depending on the model variant. The order of the listed car models is as follows:

- 3-door hatchback
- 5-door hatchback
- 4-door saloon
- Sports tourer

Refer to the table header to find the correct tyre pressure for your model.

3-door hatchback		Comfort with up to 3 people		ECO with up to 3 people		With full load	
Engine	Tyres	front	rear	front	rear	front	rear
		[kPa/bar] ([psi])	[kPa/bar] ([psi])	[kPa/bar] ([psi])	[kPa/bar] ([psi])	[kPa/bar] ([psi])	[kPa/bar] ([psi])
A14XER	225/55 R17, 235/45 R19, 235/50 R18, 235/55 R17, 245/45 R18	210/2.1 (30)	210/2.1 (30)	250/2.5 (36)	250/2.5 (36)	220/2.2 (32)	260/2.6 (38)

**308**      **Technical data**

---

**3-door hatchback**

<b>Engine</b>	<b>Tyres</b>	<b>Comfort with up to 3 people</b>		<b>ECO with up to 3 people</b>		<b>With full load</b>	
		<b>front</b>	<b>rear</b>	<b>front</b>	<b>rear</b>	<b>front</b>	<b>rear</b>
		<b>[kPa/bar] ([psi])</b>	<b>[kPa/bar] ([psi])</b>	<b>[kPa/bar] ([psi])</b>	<b>[kPa/bar] ([psi])</b>	<b>[kPa/bar] ([psi])</b>	<b>[kPa/bar] ([psi])</b>
A18XER	225/55 R17, 235/45 R19, 235/50 R18, 235/55 R17, 245/40 R20, 245/45 R18	210/2.1 (30)	210/2.1 (30)	250/2.5 (36)	250/2.5 (36)	220/2.2 (32)	260/2.6 (38)
B14NEL,	225/55 R17,	210/2.1 (30)	210/2.1 (30)	300/3.0 (43)	300/3.0 (43)	220/2.2 (32)	270/2.7 (39)
B14NET	235/45 R19, 235/50 R18, 235/55 R17, 245/40 R20, 245/45 R18	210/2.1 (30)	210/2.1 (30)	270/2.7 (39)	270/2.7 (39)	220/2.2 (32)	270/2.7 (39)

---

3-door hatchback		Comfort with up to 3 people		ECO with up to 3 people		With full load	
Engine	Tyres	front	rear	front	rear	front	rear
		[kPa/bar] ([psi])	[kPa/bar] ([psi])	[kPa/bar] ([psi])	[kPa/bar] ([psi])	[kPa/bar] ([psi])	[kPa/bar] ([psi])
A16XHT,	225/55 R17	230/2.3 (33)	230/2.3 (33)	300/3.0 (43)	300/3.0 (43)	240/2.4 (35)	280/2.8 (41)
B16SHT,	235/45 R19,	230/2.3 (33)	230/2.3 (33)	270/2.7 (39)	270/2.7 (39)	240/2.4 (35)	280/2.8 (41)
A20DTH,	235/50 R18,						
A20DTR,	235/55 R17,						
B16DTH,	245/40 R20,						
B16DTL,	245/45 R18						
B16SHL							
B20NFT	235/45 R18,	240/2.4 (35)	240/2.4 (35)	270/2.7 (39)	280/2.8 (41)	260/2.6 (38)	300/3.0 (43)
	245/40 R19						
	245/35 R20	270/2.7 (39)	250/2.5 (36)	280/2.8 (41)	290/2.9 (42)	280/2.8 (41)	310/3.1 (44)
All	Temporary spare wheel T125/70 R17	420/4.2 (61)	420/4.2 (61)	–	–	420/4.2 (61)	420/4.2 (61)

## 310 Technical data

---

5-door hatchback		Comfort with up to 3 people		ECO with up to 3 people		With full load	
Engine	Tyres	front	rear	front	rear	front	rear
		[kPa/bar] ([psi])	[kPa/bar] ([psi])	[kPa/bar] ([psi])	[kPa/bar] ([psi])	[kPa/bar] ([psi])	[kPa/bar] ([psi])
B14NET LPG, B14NET, B14NEL, B14XER	205/55 R16, 205/60 R16, 205/65 R16, 215/50 R17, 215/60 R16, 225/45 R18, 235/40 R19	220/2.2 (32)	220/2.2 (32)	270/2.7 (39)	270/2.7 (39)	230/2.3 (33)	270/2.7 (39)
B16XER	205/55 R16, 205/60 R16, 215/50 R17, 215/60 R16, 225/45 R18, 235/40 R19	220/2.2 (32)	220/2.2 (32)	270/2.7 (39)	270/2.7 (39)	230/2.3 (33)	270/2.7 (39)

---

5-door hatchback		Comfort with up to 3 people		ECO with up to 3 people		With full load	
Engine	Tyres	front	rear	front	rear	front	rear
		[kPa/bar] ([psi])	[kPa/bar] ([psi])	[kPa/bar] ([psi])	[kPa/bar] ([psi])	[kPa/bar] ([psi])	[kPa/bar] ([psi])
A16XHT, B16DTH, B16DTL	215/60 R16,	230/2.3 (33)	230/2.3 (33)	270/2.7 (39) <sup>9)</sup>	270/2.7 (39) <sup>9)</sup>	240/2.4 (35)	280/2.8 (41)
	225/50 R17, 235/45 R18						
	235/40 R19,	240/2.4 (35)	220/2.2 (32)	270/2.7 (39)	270/2.7 (39)	250/2.5 (36)	290/2.9 (42)
	215/50 R17						
	205/60 R16,	250/2.5 (36)	230/2.3 (33)	270/2.7 (39)	270/2.7 (39)	260/2.6 (38)	300/3.0 (43)
	205/55 R16						

## 312 Technical data

5-door hatchback		Comfort with up to 3 people		ECO with up to 3 people		With full load	
Engine	Tyres	front	rear	front	rear	front	rear
		[kPa/bar] ([psi])	[kPa/bar] ([psi])	[kPa/bar] ([psi])	[kPa/bar] ([psi])	[kPa/bar] ([psi])	[kPa/bar] ([psi])
B16SHL	215/60 R16,	230/2.3 (33)	230/2.3 (33)	270/2.7 (39)	270/2.7 (39)	240/2.4 (35)	280/2.8 (41)
	225/50 R17,						
	235/45 R18						
	235/40 R19	240/2.4 (35)	220/2.2 (32)	270/2.7 (39)	270/2.7 (39)	250/2.5 (36)	290/2.9 (42)
205/60 R16,		250/2.5 (36)	230/2.3 (33)	270/2.7 (39)	270/2.7 (39)	260/2.6 (38)	300/3.0 (43)
	205/55 R16,						
	215/50 R17						
A13DTE	205/60 R16,	220/2.2 (32)	220/2.2 (32)	270/2.7 (39)	270/2.7 (39)	230/2.3 (33)	270/2.7 (39)
	215/50 R17,						
	215/60 R16						

5-door hatchback		Comfort with up to 3 people		ECO with up to 3 people		With full load	
Engine	Tyres	front	rear	front	rear	front	rear
		[kPa/bar] ([psi])	[kPa/bar] ([psi])	[kPa/bar] ([psi])	[kPa/bar] ([psi])	[kPa/bar] ([psi])	[kPa/bar] ([psi])
A17DTC, A17DTS	205/65 R16,	230/2.3 (33)	230/2.3 (33)	270/2.7 (39)	270/2.7 (39)	240/2.4 (35)	280/2.8 (41)
	215/60 R16,						
	225/50 R17,						
	225/45 R17, 235/45 R18						
	205/55 R16,	240/2.4 (35)	220/2.2 (32)	270/2.7 (39)	270/2.7 (39)	250/2.5 (36)	290/2.9 (42)
	215/50 R17, 235/40 R19						
	205/60 R16, 205/55 R16, 225/45 R17	250/2.5 (36)	230/2.3 (33)	270/2.7 (39)	270/2.7 (39)	260/2.6 (38)	300/3.0 (43)

## 314 Technical data

5-door hatchback		Comfort with up to 3 people		ECO with up to 3 people		With full load	
Engine	Tyres	front	rear	front	rear	front	rear
		[kPa/bar] ([psi])	[kPa/bar] ([psi])	[kPa/bar] ([psi])	[kPa/bar] ([psi])	[kPa/bar] ([psi])	[kPa/bar] ([psi])
A20DTH	205/65 R16,	230/2.3 (33)	230/2.3 (33)	270/2.7 (39)	270/2.7 (39)	240/2.4 (35)	280/2.8 (41)
	215/60 R16,						
	225/50 R17,						
	235/45 R18						
	235/40 R19	240/2.4 (35)	220/2.2 (32)	270/2.7 (39)	270/2.7 (39)	250/2.5 (36)	290/2.9 (42)
	205/60 R16, 215/50 R17	250/2.5 (36)	230/2.3 (33)	270/2.7 (39)	270/2.7 (39)	260/2.6 (38)	300/3.0 (43)
A20DTR	215/50 R17,	250/2.5 (36)	230/2.3 (33)	270/2.7 (39)	270/2.7 (39)	260/2.6 (38)	290/2.9 (42)
	235/45 R18						



5-door hatchback		Comfort with up to 3 people		ECO with up to 3 people		With full load	
Engine	Tyres	front	rear	front	rear	front	rear
		[kPa/bar] ([psi])	[kPa/bar] ([psi])	[kPa/bar] ([psi])	[kPa/bar] ([psi])	[kPa/bar] ([psi])	[kPa/bar] ([psi])
	235/40 R19	270/2.7 (39)	250/2.5 (36)	270/2.7 (39)	270/2.7 (39)	280/2.8 (41)	300/3.0 (43)
All	Temporary spare wheel T115/70 R16	420/4.2 (61)	420/4.2 (61)	–	–	420/4.2 (61)	420/4.2 (61)

9) In combination with ultra low rolling resistance tyres 300 kPa.

## 316 Technical data

---

4-door saloon		Comfort with up to 3 people		ECO with up to 3 people		With full load	
Engine	Tyres	front	rear	front	rear	front	rear
		[kPa/bar] ([psi])	[kPa/bar] ([psi])	[kPa/bar] ([psi])	[kPa/bar] ([psi])	[kPa/bar] ([psi])	[kPa/bar] ([psi])
B14NET LPG, B14NET	205/60 R16, 205/65 R16, 215/50 R17, 215/60 R16, 225/45 R18, 225/50 R17, 235/40 R19	220/2.2 (32)	220/2.2 (32)	270/2.7 (39)	270/2.7 (39)	230/2.3 (33)	270/2.7 (39)
B14XER	205/60 R16, 215/50 R17, 215/60 R16	220/2.2 (32)	220/2.2 (32)	270/2.7 (39)	270/2.7 (39)	230/2.3 (33)	270/2.7 (39)

---

4-door saloon		Comfort with up to 3 people		ECO with up to 3 people		With full load	
Engine	Tyres	front	rear	front	rear	front	rear
		[kPa/bar] ([psi])	[kPa/bar] ([psi])	[kPa/bar] ([psi])	[kPa/bar] ([psi])	[kPa/bar] ([psi])	[kPa/bar] ([psi])
B16XER	205/60 R16,  215/50 R17, 215/60 R16, 225/45 R18, 235/40 R19	220/2.2 (32)	220/2.2 (32)	270/2.7 (39)	270/2.7 (39)	230/2.3 (33)	270/2.7 (39)

## 318 Technical data

4-door saloon		Comfort with up to 3 people		ECO with up to 3 people		With full load	
Engine	Tyres	front	rear	front	rear	front	rear
		[kPa/bar] ([psi])	[kPa/bar] ([psi])	[kPa/bar] ([psi])	[kPa/bar] ([psi])	[kPa/bar] ([psi])	[kPa/bar] ([psi])
A16XHT, B16DTH, B16DTL	215/60 R16,  225/50 R17, 235/45 R18	230/2.3 (33)	230/2.3 (33)	270/2.7 (39) <sup>9)</sup>	270/2.7 (39) <sup>9)</sup>	240/2.4 (35)	280/2.8 (41)
	235/40 R19,  215/50 R17	240/2.4 (35)	220/2.2 (32)	270/2.7 (39)	270/2.7 (39)	250/2.5 (36)	290/2.9 (42)
	205/60 R16,  205/55 R16	250/2.5 (36)	230/2.3 (33)	270/2.7 (39)	270/2.7 (39)	260/2.6 (38)	300/3.0 (43)

4-door saloon		Comfort with up to 3 people		ECO with up to 3 people		With full load	
Engine	Tyres	front	rear	front	rear	front	rear
		[kPa/bar] ([psi])	[kPa/bar] ([psi])	[kPa/bar] ([psi])	[kPa/bar] ([psi])	[kPa/bar] ([psi])	[kPa/bar] ([psi])
B16SHL	215/60 R16,	230/2.3 (33)	230/2.3 (33)	270/2.7 (39)	270/2.7 (39)	240/2.4 (35)	280/2.8 (41)
	225/50 R17,						
	235/45 R18						
	235/40 R19	240/2.4 (35)	220/2.2 (32)	270/2.7 (39)	270/2.7 (39)	250/2.5 (36)	290/2.9 (42)
	205/60 R16,	250/2.5 (36)	230/2.3 (33)	270/2.7 (39)	270/2.7 (39)	260/2.6 (38)	300/3.0 (43)
	205/55 R16,						
	215/50 R17						

## 320 Technical data

4-door saloon		Comfort with up to 3 people		ECO with up to 3 people		With full load	
Engine	Tyres	front	rear	front	rear	front	rear
		[kPa/bar] ([psi])	[kPa/bar] ([psi])	[kPa/bar] ([psi])	[kPa/bar] ([psi])	[kPa/bar] ([psi])	[kPa/bar] ([psi])
A13DTE	205/60 R16,  215/50 R17, 215/60 R16	220/2.2 (32)	220/2.2 (32)	270/2.7 (39)	270/2.7 (39)	230/2.3 (33)	270/2.7 (39)
All	Temporary spare wheel  T115/70 R16	420/4.2 (61)	420/4.2 (61)	–	–	420/4.2 (61)	420/4.2 (61)

9) In combination with ultra low rolling resistance tyres 300 kPa.

Sports tourer		Comfort with up to 3 people		ECO with up to 3 people		With full load	
Engine	Tyres	front	rear	front	rear	front	rear
		[kPa/bar] ([psi])	[kPa/bar] ([psi])	[kPa/bar] ([psi])	[kPa/bar] ([psi])	[kPa/bar] ([psi])	[kPa/bar] ([psi])
B14NET LPG, B14NET, B14NEL	205/55 R16, 205/60 R16, 205/65 R16, 215/50 R17, 215/60 R16, 225/45 R18, 235/40 R19	220/2.2 (32)	220/2.2 (32)	270/2.7 (39)	270/2.7 (39)	230/2.3 (33)	270/2.7 (39)
B14XER	205/55 R16, 205/60 R16, 215/50 R17, 215/60 R16, 225/45 R17	220/2.2 (32)	220/2.2 (32)	270/2.7 (39)	270/2.7 (39)	230/2.3 (33)	270/2.7 (39)

## 322 Technical data

---

Sports tourer	Engine	Tyres	Comfort with up to 3 people		ECO with up to 3 people		With full load	
			front	rear	front	rear	front	rear
			[kPa/bar] ([psi])	[kPa/bar] ([psi])	[kPa/bar] ([psi])	[kPa/bar] ([psi])	[kPa/bar] ([psi])	[kPa/bar] ([psi])
B16XER	205/55 R16, 205/60 R16, 215/50 R17, 215/60 R16, 225/45 R17, 225/45 R18, 235/40 R19	220/2.2 (32)	220/2.2 (32)	270/2.7 (39)	270/2.7 (39)	230/2.3 (33)	270/2.7 (39)	

---



Sports tourer		Comfort with up to 3 people		ECO with up to 3 people		With full load	
		front	rear	front	rear	front	rear
Engine	Tyres	[kPa/bar] ([psi])	[kPa/bar] ([psi])	[kPa/bar] ([psi])	[kPa/bar] ([psi])	[kPa/bar] ([psi])	[kPa/bar] ([psi])
B16DTH, B16DTL	215/60 R16,	230/2.3 (33)	230/2.3 (33)	270/2.7 (39) <sup>9)</sup>	270/2.7 (39) <sup>9)</sup>	240/2.4 (35)	280/2.8 (41)
	225/50 R17, 235/45 R18						
	235/40 R19,	240/2.4 (35)	220/2.2 (32)	270/2.7 (39)	270/2.7 (39)	250/2.5 (36)	290/2.9 (42)
	215/50 R17						
	205/60 R16,	250/2.5 (36)	230/2.3 (33)	270/2.7 (39)	270/2.7 (39)	260/2.6 (38)	300/3.0 (43)
	205/55 R16						

## 324 Technical data

Sports tourer	Engine	Tyres	Comfort with up to 3 people		ECO with up to 3 people		With full load	
			front	rear	front	rear	front	rear
			[kPa/bar] ([psi])	[kPa/bar] ([psi])	[kPa/bar] ([psi])	[kPa/bar] ([psi])	[kPa/bar] ([psi])	[kPa/bar] ([psi])
B16SHL	215/60 R16,  225/50 R17, 235/45 R18	230/2.3 (33)	230/2.3 (33)	270/2.7 (39)	270/2.7 (39)	240/2.4 (35)	280/2.8 (41)	
	235/40 R19	240/2.4 (35)	220/2.2 (32)	270/2.7 (39)	270/2.7 (39)	250/2.5 (36)	290/2.9 (42)	
	205/60 R16,  205/55 R16, 215/50 R17	250/2.5 (36)	230/2.3 (33)	270/2.7 (39)	270/2.7 (39)	260/2.6 (38)	300/3.0 (43)	
A13DTE	205/60 R16,  215/50 R17, 215/60 R16	220/2.2 (32)	220/2.2 (32)	270/2.7 (39)	270/2.7 (39)	230/2.3 (33)	270/2.7 (39)	

Sports tourer Engine	Tyres	Comfort with up to 3 people		ECO with up to 3 people		With full load	
		front	rear	front	rear	front	rear
		[kPa/bar] ([psi])	[kPa/bar] ([psi])	[kPa/bar] ([psi])	[kPa/bar] ([psi])	[kPa/bar] ([psi])	[kPa/bar] ([psi])
A17DTN	205/65 R16,  215/60 R16, 225/50 R17, 225/45 R17, 235/45 R18	230/2.3 (33)	230/2.3 (33)	270/2.7 (39)	270/2.7 (39)	240/2.4 (35)	280/2.8 (41)
	205/55 R16,  215/50 R17, 235/40 R19	240/2.4 (35)	220/2.2 (32)	270/2.7 (39)	270/2.7 (39)	250/2.5 (36)	290/2.9 (42)
	205/60 R16, 205/55 R16, 225/45 R17	250/2.5 (36)	230/2.3 (33)	270/2.7 (39)	270/2.7 (39)	260/2.6 (38)	300/3.0 (43)

## 326 Technical data

Sports tourer		Comfort with up to 3 people		ECO with up to 3 people		With full load	
		front	rear	front	rear	front	rear
Engine	Tyres	[kPa/bar] ([psi])	[kPa/bar] ([psi])	[kPa/bar] ([psi])	[kPa/bar] ([psi])	[kPa/bar] ([psi])	[kPa/bar] ([psi])
A20DTH	205/65 R16,	230/2.3 (33)	230/2.3 (33)	270/2.7 (39)	270/2.7 (39)	240/2.4 (35)	280/2.8 (41)
	215/60 R16,						
	225/50 R17,						
	235/45 R18						
	235/40 R19	240/2.4 (35)	220/2.2 (32)	270/2.7 (39)	270/2.7 (39)	250/2.5 (36)	290/2.9 (42)
	205/60 R16, 215/50 R17	250/2.5 (36)	230/2.3 (33)	270/2.7 (39)	270/2.7 (39)	260/2.6 (38)	300/3.0 (43)
A20DTR	215/50 R17,	250/2.5 (36)	230/2.3 (33)	270/2.7 (39)	270/2.7 (39)	260/2.6 (38)	290/2.9 (42)
	235/45 R18						

Sports tourer		Comfort with up to 3 people		ECO with up to 3 people		With full load	
		front	rear	front	rear	front	rear
Engine	Tyres	[kPa/bar] ([psi])	[kPa/bar] ([psi])	[kPa/bar] ([psi])	[kPa/bar] ([psi])	[kPa/bar] ([psi])	[kPa/bar] ([psi])
	235/40 R19	270/2.7 (39)	250/2.5 (36)	270/2.7 (39)	270/2.7 (39)	280/2.8 (41)	300/3.0 (43)
All	Temporary spare wheel T115/70 R16	420/4.2 (61)	420/4.2 (61)	–	–	420/4.2 (61)	420/4.2 (61)

9) In combination with ultra low rolling resistance tyres 300 kPa.

## Customer information

<b>Customer information</b> .....	<b>328</b>
Declaration of conformity .....	328
Software acknowledgement ....	331
<b>Vehicle data recording and privacy</b> .....	<b>332</b>
Event data recorders .....	332
Radio Frequency Identification (RFID) .....	333

## Customer information

### Declaration of conformity

#### Radio transmission systems

This vehicle has systems that transmit and/or receive radio waves subject to Directive 1999/5/EC.

These systems are in compliance with the essential requirements and other relevant provisions of Directive 1999/5/EC. Copies of the original Declarations of Conformity can be obtained on our website.

#### Radar systems

Country-specific Declarations of Conformity for radar systems are shown on the following page:

**European Union**

EC Directive: 1999/5/EC  
 Manufacturer: Delphi Electronics & Safety  
 Model / Type Designation: L2C0038TR  
 Description / Intended Use:  
 Electronically Scanned Radar (ESR),  
 a 76.5GHz adaptive cruise control system  
 radar fitted to motor vehicles at vehicle  
 manufacture  
 Applied Standards:  
 47 CFR Part 15  
 CEPT ERC Recommendation 70-03  
 EN 60950  
 EN 301 091  
 European Commission Directive  
 2006/28/EC

I declare that the product referenced  
 above is in compliance with the essential  
 requirements and other relevant  
 provisions of Directive 1999/5/EC, on the  
 approximation of the laws of the member  
 states relating to Directive 1999/5/EC.

**Brazil**

Modelo: L2C0038TR



1071-10-3451



0107897843800248

Este equipamento  
 opera em caráter  
 secundário, isto é,  
 não tem direito a  
 proteção contra  
 interferência  
 prejudicial, mesmo de estações do  
 mesmo tipo, e não pode causar  
 interferência a sistemas operando em  
 caráter primário

**Indonesia**

14785/POSTEL/2010  
 1982

**Jordan**

Type Approval No.: TRC/LPD/2009/87  
 Equipment Type: Low Power Device (LPD)

**Malaysia**

Approval #: B 05358

**Moldova**

8526

**Morocco**

AGREE PAR L'ANRT MAROC  
 Numéro d'agrément :  
 MR 4838 ANRT 2009  
 Date d'agrément : 22/5/2009

**Singapore**

Complies with  
 IDA Standards  
 DA105753

**South Africa**

TA-2009/163  
 APPROVED

**South Korea**

방송통신위원회  
 등록번호 : KCC-0809R12008TR

**Taiwan**

◎ CCAB09LP4590T3

**UAE**

TRA  
 REGISTERED No:  
 0018923/09  
 DEALER No:  
 DA0047809/10

**United States of America and Canada**

Model / FCC ID: L2C0038TR IC: 3432A-0038TR

This device complies with Part 15 of the FCC Rules  
 and with Industry Canada license-exempt RSS  
 standard(s). Operation is subject to the following  
 two conditions: (1) This device may not cause  
 harmful interference, and (2) This device must  
 accept any interference received, including  
 interference that may cause undesired operation.

Le présent appareil est conforme aux CNR  
 d'Industrie Canada applicables aux appareils  
 radio exempts de licence. L'exploitation est  
 autorisée aux deux conditions suivantes: (1)  
 l'appareil ne doit pas produire de brouillage, et  
 (2) l'utilisateur de l'appareil doit accepter tout  
 brouillage radioélectrique subi, même si le  
 brouillage est susceptible d'en compromettre le  
 fonctionnement.

Note: Changes or modifications not expressly  
 approved by the party responsible for compliance  
 could void the user's authority to operate the  
 equipment. The term "IC:" before the radio  
 certification number only signifies that Industry  
 Canada technical specifications were met.

Note: This equipment complies with radiation  
 exposure limits set forth for an uncontrolled  
 environment. This equipment should be installed  
 and operated with minimum distance of 20 cm  
 between the radiator and your body.

**Jack, 3-door and 5-door hatchback, 4-door saloon**

**Translation of the original declaration of conformity**

Declaration of conformity according to EC Directive 2006/42/EC

We declare that the product:

Product designation: Jack

Type/GM part number: 13576735

is in compliance with the provisions of Directive 2006/42/EC.

Applied technical standards:

- GMN9737 : jacking
- GM 14337 : standard equipment jack – hardware tests
- GMN5127 : vehicle integrity – hoisting and service station jacking
- GMW15005 : standard equipment jack and spare tyre, vehicle test
- ISO TS 16949 : quality management systems

The signatory is authorised to compile the technical documentation.

Rüsselsheim, 31st January 2014

signed by

Hans-Peter Metzger

Engineering Group Manager Chassis & Structure

Adam Opel AG

D-65423 Rüsselsheim

**Jack, Sports Tourer**

**Translation of the original declaration of conformity**

Declaration of conformity according to EC Directive 2006/42/EC

We declare that the product:

Product designation: Jack

Type/GM part number: 13348505, 13504504

is in compliance with the provisions of Directive 2006/42/EC.

Applied technical standards:

- GMN9737 : jacking
- GM 14337 : standard equipment jack – hardware tests

- GMN5127 : vehicle integrity – hoisting and service station jacking
- GMW15005 : standard equipment jack and spare tyre, vehicle test
- ISO TS 16949 : quality management systems

The signatory is authorised to compile the technical documentation.

Rüsselsheim, 31st January 2014

signed by

Hans-Peter Metzger

Engineering Group Manager Chassis & Structure

Adam Opel AG

D-65423 Rüsselsheim



## Software acknowledgement

Certain OnStar components include libcurl and unzip software and other third party software. Below are the notices and licenses associated with libcurl and unzip and for other third party software please see <http://www.lg.com/global/support/opensource/index>.

### libcurl

Copyright and permission notice

Copyright (c) 1996 - 2010, Daniel Stenberg, <daniel@haxx.se>.

All rights reserved.

Permission to use, copy, modify, and distribute this software for any purpose with or without fee is hereby granted, provided that the above copyright notice and this permission notice appear in all copies.

The software is provided "as is", without warranty of any kind, express or implied, including but not limited to the warranties of merchantability, fitness for a particular purpose and noninfringement of third party rights. In no event shall the authors or

copyright holders be liable for any claim, damages or other liability, whether in an action of contract, tort or otherwise, arising from, out of or in connection with the software or the use or other dealings in the software.

Except as contained in this notice, the name of a copyright holder shall not be used in advertising or otherwise to promote the sale, use or other dealings in this Software without prior written authorization of the copyright holder.

### unzip

This is version 2005-Feb-10 of the Info-ZIP copyright and license. The definitive version of this document should be available at <ftp://ftp.info-zip.org/pub/infozip/license.html> indefinitely.

Copyright (c) 1990-2005 Info-ZIP. All rights reserved.

For the purposes of this copyright and license, "Info-ZIP" is defined as the following set of individuals:

Mark Adler, John Bush, Karl Davis, Harald Denker, Jean-Michel Dubois, Jean-loup Gailly, Hunter Goatley, Ed

Gordon, Ian Gorman, Chris Herborth, Dirk Haase, Greg Hartwig, Robert Heath, Jonathan Hudson, Paul Kienitz, David Kirschbaum, Johnny Lee, Onno van der Linden, Igor Mandrichenko, Steve P. Miller, Sergio Monesi, Keith Owens, George Petrov, Greg Roelofs, Kai Uwe Rommel, Steve Salisbury, Dave Smith, Steven M. Schweda, Christian Spieler, Cosmin Truta, Antoine Verheijen, Paul von Behren, Rich Wales, Mike White.

This software is provided "as is," without warranty of any kind, express or implied. In no event shall Info-ZIP or its contributors be held liable for any direct, indirect, incidental, special or consequential damages arising out of the use of or inability to use this software.

Permission is granted to anyone to use this software for any purpose, including commercial applications, and to alter it and redistribute it freely, subject to the following restrictions:

1. Redistributions of source code must retain the above copyright notice, definition, disclaimer, and this list of conditions.
2. Redistributions in binary form (compiled executables) must reproduce the above copyright notice, definition, disclaimer, and this list of conditions in documentation and/or other materials provided with the distribution. The sole exception to this condition is redistribution of a standard UnZipSFX binary (including SFXWiz) as part of a self-extracting archive; that is permitted without inclusion of this license, as long as the normal SFX banner has not been removed from the binary or disabled.
3. Altered versions—including, but not limited to, ports to new operating systems, existing ports with new graphical interfaces, and dynamic, shared, or static library versions—must be plainly marked as such and must not be misrepresented as being the original source. Such altered

versions also must not be misrepresented as being Info-ZIP releases—including, but not limited to, labeling of the altered versions with the names “Info-ZIP” (or any variation thereof, including, but not limited to, different capitalizations), “Pocket UnZip,” “WiZ” or “MacZip” without the explicit permission of Info-ZIP. Such altered versions are further prohibited from misrepresentative use of the Zip-Bugs or Info-ZIP e-mail addresses or of the Info-ZIP URL(s).

4. Info-ZIP retains the right to use the names “Info-ZIP,” “Zip,” “UnZip,” “UnZipSFX,” “WiZ,” “Pocket UnZip,” “Pocket Zip,” and “MacZip” for its own source and binary releases.

## Vehicle data recording and privacy

### Event data recorders

#### Data storage modules in the vehicle

A large number of electronic components of your vehicle contain data storage modules temporarily or permanently storing technical data about the condition of the vehicle, events and errors. In general, this technical information documents the condition of parts, modules, systems or the environment:

- operating conditions of system components (e.g. filling levels)
- status messages of the vehicle and its single components (e.g. number of wheel revolutions / rotational speed, deceleration, lateral acceleration)
- dysfunctions and defects in important system components

- vehicle reactions in particular driving situations (e.g. inflation of an airbag, activation of the stability regulation system)
- environmental conditions (e.g. temperature)

These data are exclusively technical and help identifying and correcting errors as well as optimising vehicle functions.

Motion profiles indicating travelled routes cannot be created with these data.

If services are used (e.g. repair works, service processes, warranty cases, quality assurance), employees of the service network (manufacturer included) are able to read out this technical information from the event and error data storage modules applying special diagnostic devices. If required, you will receive further information at these workshops. After an error has been corrected, the data are deleted from the error storage module or they are constantly overwritten.

When using the vehicle, situations may occur in which these technical data related to other information (accident report, damages on the vehicle, witness statements etc.) may be associated with a specific person - possibly, with the assistance of an expert.

Additional functions contractually agreed upon with the client (e.g. vehicle location in emergency cases) allow the transmission of particular vehicle data from the vehicle.

## Radio Frequency Identification (RFID)

RFID technology is used in some vehicles for functions such as tyre pressure monitoring and ignition system security. It is also used in connection with conveniences such as radio remote controls for door locking/unlocking and starting, and in-vehicle transmitters for garage door openers. RFID technology in Vauxhall vehicles does not use or record personal information or link with any other Vauxhall system containing personal information.

# Index

## A

Accessories and vehicle modifications .....	226
Active Emergency Braking.....	196
Active head restraints .....	38
Adaptive cruise control.....	117, 186
Adaptive forward lighting . .	117, 144, 237
Adjustable air vents .....	161
Airbag and belt tensioners .....	112
Airbag deactivation .....	51, 112
Airbag system .....	49
Air conditioning regular operation .....	162
Air conditioning system .....	154
Air intake .....	161
Air vents.....	161
Antilock brake system .....	175
Antilock brake system (ABS) .....	114
Anti-theft alarm system .....	28
Anti-theft locking system .....	27
Appearance care.....	282
Armrest .....	45, 46
Armrest storage .....	61
Ashtrays .....	105
Automatic anti-dazzle .....	32
Automatic light control .....	141
Automatic locking .....	24
Automatic transmission .....	171
Auxiliary heater.....	160

## B

Battery discharge protection .....	152
Battery voltage .....	127
Belts.....	46
Bicycle rack.....	63
Bonnet .....	227
Brake and clutch fluid.....	286
Brake and clutch system .....	113
Brake assist .....	178
Brake fluid .....	231
Brakes .....	175, 231
Breakdown.....	280
Bulb replacement .....	234

## C

Capacities .....	305
Cargo management system .....	89
Car Pass .....	21
Catalytic converter .....	170
Central locking system .....	23
Centre console lighting .....	151
Centre console storage .....	62
Changing tyre and wheel size ...	266
Charging system .....	113
Child locks .....	25
Child restraint installation locations .....	55
Child restraints.....	53
Child restraint systems .....	53
Cigarette lighter .....	105

Climate control .....	15
Climate control systems.....	153
Clock.....	103
Code.....	124
Control indicators.....	109
Control of the vehicle .....	164
Controls.....	99
Convex shape .....	30
Coolant and antifreeze.....	286
Cruise control .....	117, 183
Cupholders .....	59
Curtain airbag system .....	51
Curve lighting.....	144

**D**

Danger, Warnings and Cautions ...	4
Daytime running lights .....	144
Declaration of conformity.....	328
Diesel fuel system bleeding .....	233
Diesel particle filter.....	115, 169
Door open .....	118
Doors.....	25
Driver assistance systems.....	183
Driver Information Centre.....	118
Driving characteristics and towing tips .....	220
Driving hints.....	164

**E**

Electric adjustment .....	30
Electrical system.....	252

Electric parking brake.....	113, 176
Electric parking brake fault.....	114
Electronic climate control system	156
Electronic driving programmes ..	173
Electronic Stability Control.....	179
Electronic Stability Control and Traction Control system.....	115
Electronic Stability Control off ...	115
End-of-life vehicle recovery .....	226
Engine compartment fuse box ...	253
Engine coolant .....	229
Engine coolant temperature gauge .....	107
Engine data .....	293
Engine exhaust .....	169
Engine identification.....	289
Engine oil .....	228, 286, 290
Engine oil pressure .....	116
Entry lighting .....	151
Event data recorders.....	332
Exit lighting .....	151
Exterior care .....	282
Exterior light .....	117
Exterior lighting .....	13, 140
Exterior mirrors.....	30

**F**

Fault .....	173
First aid.....	93
First aid kit .....	93

Fixed air vents .....	161
Flex-Fix system.....	63
Fog light .....	117
Fog lights .....	238
Folding mirrors .....	30
Following distance indication.....	196
Forward collision alert.....	193
Front airbag system .....	49
Front fog lights .....	148
Front seats.....	39
Front storage.....	60
Front turn signal lights .....	240
Fuel.....	213
Fuel consumption - CO <sub>2</sub> - Emissions .....	219
Fuel for diesel engines .....	213
Fuel for liquid gas operation.....	214
Fuel for petrol engines .....	213
Fuel gauge .....	107
Fuel selector .....	107
Fuses .....	252

**G**

Gauges.....	106
General information .....	219
Glass panel .....	36
Glovebox .....	59
Graphic-Info-Display, Colour- Info-Display .....	122

**H**

Halogen headlights .....	234
Hand brake.....	175, 176
Hazard warning flashers .....	147
Headlight flash .....	142
Headlight range adjustment .....	143
Headlights.....	140
Headlights when driving abroad	143
Head restraint adjustment .....	9
Head restraints .....	37
Heated mirrors .....	31
Heated rear window .....	35
Heated steering wheel .....	99
Heating .....	45
Heating and ventilation system .	153
Height adjustable rear floor cover	86
High beam .....	117, 142
High beam assist.....	117, 142
Hill start assist .....	178
Horn .....	15, 100

**I**

Identification plate .....	288
Ignition switch positions .....	165
Immobiliser .....	29, 117
Indicators.....	106
Information displays.....	118
Instrument cluster .....	106
Instrument panel fuse box .....	255
Instrument panel illumination .....	252

**Instrument panel illumination**

control .....	149
Instrument panel overview .....	11
Interactive driving system.....	180
Interior care .....	284
Interior lighting.....	149
Interior lights .....	149, 252
Interior mirrors.....	31
Interruption of power supply .....	174
Introduction .....	3
ISOFIX child restraint systems .....	58

**J**

Jump starting .....	278
---------------------	-----

**K**

Key, memorised settings.....	22
Keys .....	20
Keys, locks.....	20

**L**

Lane departure warning.....	114, 212
Lashing eyes .....	89
Lighting features.....	151
Light switch .....	140
Load compartment .....	25, 80
Load compartment cover .....	84
Load compartment fuse box .....	256
Loading information .....	95
Low fuel .....	116
Low washer fluid .....	117

**M**

Malfunction indicator light .....	113
Manual anti-dazzle .....	31
Manual mode .....	173
Manual transmission .....	175
Manual windows .....	32
Memorised settings.....	22
Mirror adjustment .....	10
Misted light covers .....	149

**N**

New vehicle running-in .....	164
Number plate light .....	251

**O**

Object detection systems.....	198
Odometer .....	106
Oil, engine.....	286, 290
OnStar® system.....	135
Operate pedal.....	113
Outside temperature .....	102
Overrun cut-off .....	166

**P**

Parking .....	19, 168
Parking assist .....	198
Parking brake .....	176
Parking lights .....	148
Particulate filter.....	169
Performance .....	296
Performing work .....	227

Pollen filter .....	161
Power outlets .....	104
Power seat adjustment .....	43
Power steering.....	114
Power steering fluid.....	230
Power windows .....	33
Preheating .....	115
Puncture.....	270

**Q**

Quickheat.....	160
----------------	-----

**R**

Radio Frequency Identification (RFID) .....	333
Radio remote control .....	21
Reading lights .....	150
Rear carrier system.....	63
Rear floor storage cover .....	86
Rear fog light .....	117
Rear fog lights .....	148
Rear seats.....	46
Rear storage.....	84
Rear view camera .....	207
Rear window wiper/washer .....	102
Recommended fluids and lubricants .....	286, 290
Reduced engine power.....	117
Refuelling .....	215
Retained power off.....	165
Reversing lights .....	149

Ride control systems.....	178
Roof.....	35
Roof load.....	95
Roof rack .....	94

**S**

Safety belts.....	46
Safety net .....	91
Seat adjustment .....	7, 39
Seat belt .....	9
Seat belt reminder .....	112
Seat belts .....	46
Seat folding .....	42
Seat heating.....	45
Seat position .....	39
Selector lever .....	172
Service .....	162, 285
Service display .....	108
Service information .....	285
Service vehicle soon .....	113
Side airbag system .....	50
Side blind spot alert.....	206
Sidelights.....	140
Side turn signal lights .....	250
Smartphone controller.....	124
Software acknowledgement.....	331
Spare wheel .....	274
Speed limiter.....	185
Speedometer .....	106
Starting and operating.....	164

Starting off .....	18
Starting the engine .....	165
Steering.....	164
Steering wheel adjustment ....	10, 99
Steering wheel controls .....	99
Stop-start system.....	166
Storage.....	59
Storage compartments.....	59
Sunroof .....	35
Sunvisor lights .....	150
Sun visors .....	35
Symbols .....	4

**T**

Tachometer .....	106
Tail lights .....	242
Three-point seat belt .....	47
Tools .....	259
Top-tether fastening eyes .....	58
Tow bar.....	219
Towing.....	219, 280
Towing another vehicle .....	281
Towing equipment .....	221
Towing the vehicle .....	280
Traction Control system .....	178
Traction Control system off .....	115
Traffic sign assistant.....	209
Trailer coupling.....	219
Trailer stability assist .....	224
Trailer towing .....	220

Transmission .....	17
Transmission display .....	171
Tread depth .....	265
Trip computer .....	128
Trip odometer .....	106
Turn and lane-change signals ...	147
Turn signal .....	112
Tyre chains .....	266
Tyre designations .....	261
Tyre pressure .....	261
Tyre pressure monitoring system.....	116, 262
Tyre pressures .....	307
Tyre repair kit .....	267

## U

Ultrasonic parking assist ...	115, 198
Underseat storage .....	61
Upholstery.....	284
Upshift.....	114
Using this manual .....	3

## V

Vehicle battery .....	231
Vehicle checks.....	227
Vehicle data.....	290
Vehicle data recording and privacy.....	332
Vehicle detected ahead.....	118
Vehicle dimensions .....	304
Vehicle Identification Number ...	288

Vehicle jack.....	259
Vehicle messages .....	124
Vehicle personalisation .....	130
Vehicle security.....	27
Vehicle specific data .....	3
Vehicle storage.....	226
Vehicle tools.....	259
Vehicle unlocking .....	6
Vehicle weight .....	300
Ventilation.....	153

## W

Warning chimes .....	127
Warning lights.....	106
Warning triangle .....	92
Washer and wiper systems .....	16
Washer fluid .....	230
Wheel changing .....	270
Wheel covers .....	266
Wheels and tyres .....	261
Windows.....	32
Windscreen.....	32
Windscreen wiper/washer .....	100
Winter tyres .....	261
Wiper blade replacement .....	233



Copyright by General Motors UK Ltd.

The information contained in this publication is effective as of the date indicated below. General Motors UK Ltd. reserves the right to make changes to the technical specifications, features and design of the vehicles relative to the information contained in this publication, as well as changes to the publication itself.

Edition: August 2015, General Motors UK Ltd.

Printed on chlorine-free bleached paper.

KTA-2685/14-VX-en

08/2015

